



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

<https://archive.org/details/31761114691942>

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

(2)

Publications

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE

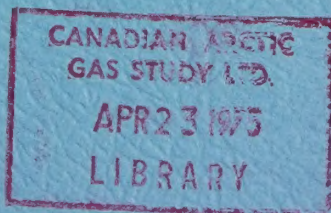
(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 14, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XXIX



APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,
Mr. Alick Ryder and
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley
Pipeline Inquiry;

Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.
Mr. Jack Marshall,
Mr. Darryl Carter and
Mr. John Steeves for Canadian Arctic Gas
Pipeline Limited;

Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines
Ltd.;

Mr. Russell Anthony, and
Prof. Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic
Resources Committee;

Mr. Glen W. Bell and
Mr. Gerry Sutton For Northwest Territories
Indian Brotherhood and
Metis Association of the
Northwest Territories;

Miss Lesley Lane for Inuit Tapirisat of
Canada and
The Committee for Original
Peoples' Entitlement;

Mr. Ron Veale and
Mr. Allen Lueck, for Council for Yukon Indians

Mr. Carson H. Templeton, for Environm ental Pro-
tection Board;

Mr. David Reesor, for Northwest Territories
Association of Munici-
palities;

Mr. Murray Sigler, for Northwest Territories
Chamber of Commerce.

347
M835
Vol. XXIX

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 23 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

John Ivor CLARK

Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD

Edward Charles McROBERTS

William Alexander SLUSARCHUK

Norman Reuben MORGENSTERN

Richard H. COOPER

R.H. HARDY

Guy Leslie WILLIAMS

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott (cont) 3568

Hoyt PURCELL

Graham George KING

Carl M. KOSKIMAKI

Milton E. HOLMBERG

- In Chief 3637

John T. McMULLEN

Patrick S.T.J. PRICE

Kenneth E. RATHJE

Cameron M. REID

- In Chief 3665

EXHIBITS:

97 Graph 3564

98 Heave Gauge Pair Data 3564

99 One sheet summary of Prime Route
via Fort Simpson 3566

100 Letter, Mollard & Associates, Feb. 6/70 3566

101 Letter, Mollard & Associates, Oct. 22/69 3567

102 2 Slides, prototype, Northern River,
dry bottom 3567

103 Report "The Stability of Thawing Slopes" 3568

1 Yellowknife, N.W.T.

2 April 14, 1975.

3 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

4 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,

5 I thought I should outline what I've discussed with
6 my friends with respect to the timetable for this
7 week. I anticipate that we will be able, everyone
8 will be delighted to hear, to excuse this panel
9 sometime this afternoon, and begin with the next
10 panel, four members of which are here. The balance
11 will be coming in on the three o'clock plane and Mr.
12 Marshall suggested that if necessary, not to waste
13 any time, we can begin with the panel of four and
14 supplement it as the transportation permits.

15 Then we will continue
16 tomorrow with that panel in chief and I propose, and
17 I think my friends agree, that if it's not finished
18 by one we should continue in the afternoon until it
19 is finished.

20 Then we will have Mr. Gibbs
21 free energy on Wednesday, and I would propose that
22 we should continue as a matter of personal conven-
23 ience to him, because he has other obligations, either
24 to one or until later in the day or whatever time is
25 required to enable him to finish his cross-examination.

26 With that in mind, I would
27 therefore propose that the motion that was going to
28 be argued tomorrow at two o'clock should be instead
29 argued on Thursday at two o'clock. I'll let Mr.
30 Veale know that, and I anticipate it will not

1 inconvenience anybody who is here.

2 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
3 before my friend begins his cross-examination again,
4 there were a number of undertakings that we are
5 able to respond to now, and perhaps those could go
6 into the record.

7 The first was directed to
8 Dr. Cooper on April 11th, and can be found at page
9 3500 of the transcript, and it pertained to
10 calculating the statistical range within which the
11 100-year flood estimate would fall, and Dr. Cooper
12 can respond to that now.

13 WITNESS COOPER: Mr.
14 Commissioner, I have a slide here that is a plot
15 flood frequency curve with confidence limits on it,
16 and with your permission I'll show it.

17 This is a plot of a flood
18 frequency curve of the Mackenzie River at Norman
19 Wells. What it plots is the maximum annual discharge,
20 the maximum annual flood discharge against the fre-
21 quency of recurrence of that discharge. As you see, we
22 have 24 points. This was based on 24 years of record.
23 I believe this takes us up to the end of 1971 or '72.
24 There are several more points now.

25 The blue line that you see
26 is the best fit curve for a log normal distribution
27 of these data. Now the best estimate of the 100 year
28 flood, you'll notice that the scale down here is,
29 instead of being expressed in terms of frequency,
30 it's expressed in terms of the return period for

1 the year. For example, the one and two-year flood
2 would be this value.
3 would be this flood. The one in 100 year flood would
4 be this value. The point on the blue line is
5 the best estimate based on these data. Now the two
6 green curves are the 95% confidence limits which means
7 statistically speaking we have 95% confidence that
8 the estimate for a 100 year flood will fall between
9 this value and this value. In this case it's between
10 940,000 cubic feet per second and 1,400,000 approxi-
11 mately, cubic feet per second. The best estimate here
12 is 1,100,000.

13 Now the reason that I say
14 that I feel this record is adequate is because we can
15 examine even the value up here, and it will make
16 very little difference to our scour computation. I
17 did a rough computation on this, and it would affect
18 the scour elevation by something in the order of one
19 foot. Is that the --

20 MR. SCOTT: Can you just
21 express for us, to be sure we have them then, the
22 difference in volumes of discharge between the two
23 green lines?

24 WITNESS COOPER: 940,000
25 cubic feet per second here, and 1,400,000 cubic feet
26 per second. The best estimate would be 1,100,000.

27 MR. SCOTT: And that gives
28 you, in your judgment, a confidence level of 95%?

29 WITNESS COOPER: Yes.

30 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
I would suggest that that graph be entered as the next

1 exhibit, which I understand is 97.

2 (GRAPH MARKED EXHIBIT 97)

3 MR. MARSHALL: The next
4 were
5 undertakings with respect to Dr. Slusarchuk's
6 evidence on April 9th at 3261 in the transcript, he
7 was asked to provide data on the heave of gauge
8 pairs at the Calgary field test facility. He
9 has put together a collection of data that provides
10 information with respect to heave at the test-site,
11 and I'd like to enter a copy of that as the next
12 exhibit.

13 (HEAVE AT CALGARY TEST-SITE MARKED EXHIBIT 98)
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 On April 10th, Dr. Slusarchuk
2 was asked at 3419 in the transcript, to identify the
3 passages in the Battell report entitled "A convective
4 Model for Sub-Surface Flow Around a Chilled Pipeline",
5 dated October the 31st, 1974, that dealt with the
6 effect of sub-surface flow on the freeze zone surround-
7 ing a chilled pipeline.

8 Dr. Slusarchuk has reviewed the
9 report and the references are found at pages 2439
10 and 40. Unless Mr. Scott requires, we don't intend
11 to read those into the record.

12 Mr. Williams had been asked on
13 March 21st at 2755 in the transcript, for the locations
14 where blasting may be required. I would like Mr.
15 Williams to respond to that undertaking.

16 MR. WILLIAMS: Yes, I think
17 that the table that Mr. Marshall is entering is self-
18 evident. It gives the -- a summary of estimated
19 blasting requirements by terrain units in five physio-
20 graphic divisions. There will probably be some
21 discussion with respect to this in the construction
22 panel, and I would suggest maybe we leave further
23 discussion of that until then.

24 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
25 Mr. Williams has prepared such a one sheet summary
26 entitled "Prime Route with Fort Simpson" and then
27 summary of terrain units and miles and estimated
28 blasting requirements. I would like to enter that
29 as the next exhibit.
30

(ONE SHEET SUMMARY ENTITLED "PRIME ROUTE
WITH FORT SIMPSON" MARKED EXHIBIT 99)

On April 10th at page 3297 of
the transcript, Mr. Williams was asked to advise as
to what report the drawing of the Sans Sault site
came with. Mr. Williams, can you respond to that
please?

MR. WILLIAMS: Yes, this sketch
of the Sans Sault site that Mr. Scott asked about
the details of five subdivisions at the site, was
included in a letter from Dr. Mollard to Harold L.
Morrison of R.M. Hardy and Associates on February
the 6th, 1970, with a copy to Mr. Dau of -- at that
time, Williams Brothers Canada Limited.

I managed to find this in our
files and don't really classify it as a report, Mr.
Scott.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, we
proposed to enter that as an exhibit, the letter with
the attached sketches.

(J.D. MOLLARD AND ASSOCIATES LETTER OF
FEBRUARY 6, 1970 MARKED AS EXHIBIT 100)

MR. MARSHALL: On April the
10th, at 3302 to 05 of the transcript, Mr. Williams
was asked by Mr. Anthony for clarification concern-
ing the selection of these six potential sites that
Dr. Mollard had selected.

1 MR. WILLIAMS: Yes, I think in
2 the transcript I referred to five potential sites
3 that Dr. Mollard had selected for further investi-
4 gation. In digging into the files, I find that
5 there were actually six sites that he looked at, and
6 I also said I was sure they were spread out over at
7 least a hundred miles of the Mackenzie Valley;
8 actually, it's several hundred miles. There was one
9 site near Inuvik, one near the confluence of the
10 Root River and the Mackenzie; one near Fort McPherson;
11 one at Firth ; one near the Tanunuck (?)
12 River, and the sixth one at Sans Sault. This is
13 entered to try to clarify that question that Mr.
14 Anthony raised where we got mixed up in the five
15 potential -- five or six potential sites as compared
16 to the five sub-sites at Sans Sault.

17 MR. MARHSALL: Mr. Scott, we have
18 the letter of October 22nd, which we would like to
19 enter as the next exhibit.

20
21 (J.D. MOLLARD AND ASSOCIATES LETTER DATED
22 OCTOBER 22, 1969 AND MAPS MARKED
23 AS EXHIBIT 101)

24
25 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
26 I should have entered last week the two slides, I
27 suppose they are called, of the prototype Northern
28 River dry bottom, and perhaps I can enter them as
29 the next exhibit , which I guess is exhibit 100,
30 is it?

(2 SLIDES, PROTOTYPE NORTHERN RIVER, DRY BOTTOM MARKED
EXHIBIT 102)

Clark, Mollinshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 And also I refer
2 to, and should enter as an Exhibit, the article
3 on the Stability of Thawing Slopes, by McRoberts
4 and Morgenstern, which is reported in the Canadian
5 Geotechnical Journal for November of 1974.

6
7 (REPORT ENTITLED "THE STABILITY OF THAWING
8 SLOPES" BY MCROBERTS AND MORGENSTERN,
9 REPORTED IN CANADIAN GEOTECHNICAL JOURNAL
10 FOR NOVEMBER, 1974 MARKED AS EXHIBIT 103)

11
12 JOHN IVOR CLARK

13 GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD

14 EDWARD CHARLES MCROBERTS

15 WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK

16 NORMAN REUBEN MORGENSTERN

17 RICHARD H. COOPER

18 R.M. HARDY

19 GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, Resumed:

20
21 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT, CONTINUED:

22
23 Q May I ask a question of Dr.
24 Hardy? Dr. Hardy, in outlining your experience some
25 days ago on the Pointed Mountain Pipeline, you indi-
26 cated that a portion of that pipeline had floated to
27 the surface. I wonder if you could tell us what
28 proportion of the pipeline floated to the surface
29 in that case, in just round figures?
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

WITNESS HARDY:

A Actually, Mr. Scott, I was
referring to the pipe, not at the actual crossing,
but on approaches to the crossing in the general
muskeg area. It was -- it's completely independent
of the troubles they had at the crossing.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Q I understand that. I
wasn't trying to connect it with the crossing.

A I;m sorry,
I misunderstood you. I just can't give you the
percentage of the length of the line, but there were,
just from my impression in flying over it, there were
several locations where the pipe had floated up above
the muskeg in lengths of from 100 feet roughly to
200 feet, approximately.

Q Yes, and how long after
the pipeline had been completed did this begin to
appear?

A Oh, as far as I am
aware it occurred the first year.

Q Yes.

A After the first breakup.

Q Had the pipeline been
weighted down at all?

A Not in those locations,
no.

Q Was it weighted down in
any locations?

A Oh yes,

Q With what?

A Well, they normally
used what are called swamp weights there, which are
simply concrete blocks, quite substantial concrete
blocks.

Q Was any movement of the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1

2

concrete blocks noted?

3

A What's that again?

4

Q Was any movement of the

5

concrete blocks noted?

6

A Perhaps Dr. Clark can
give you a better answer, a more reliable answer than
I can.

9

Q Speaking of this

10

particular pipeline, does Dr. Clark know?

11

WITNESS CLARK: I haven't

12

seen this pipeline on the ground but I've seen pictures
taken of the part that floated, and one could observe
where some of the saddle weights or swamp weights had
moved off the pipeline.

16

Q How would they move

17

off, Dr. Clark?

18

A Our assessment at that

19

time was that for various reasons they were either not
correctly centred, or that there was insufficient
lateral resistance in the thawed muskeg, and that under
the buoyant force they would tend to move laterally
and there would be no resistance there to stop them.
That is an assessment made from a picture, though,
without on the ground. It was just our speculation as
to what had occurred.

27

Q Well now -- I'm sorry,

28

Dr. Hardy, do you want to say something?

29

WITNESS HARDY: These concrete

30

weights are made in two sections. There's a concrete

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 that's split horizontally and there's a bottom section
3 the pipe sits on, and then the top section is simply
4 set on, and it's that top section you see, that is
5 a little bit unstable if it hasn't got any lateral
6 support from the muskeg. I think that's the point that
7 Dr. Clark is making.

8 Q Well now, how was the
9 buoyancy problem repaired on that line?

10 A Well, this is not the
11 first line, of course, Mr. Scott, where this has
12 occurred, you see.

13 Q Oh, I understand that.
14 But I am just asking how it was repaired on this
15 particular line.

16 A It may be, you see, that
17 you do nothing for some time, but the normal thing
18 and the most economic thing to do is to simply build
19 a berm, berm above the pipe that has floated up.
20 You see, it only stays floated up because the pipe
21 has been bent, and so it's the pipe is not any longer
22 stressed to any extraordinary degree, it's just like
23 -- to get it down is a difficult thing, you see, to
24 apply a loading that will bend the pipe back down,
25 so you will either have to leave the bend in there
26 and roll it over a longer stretch, which is possible,
27 or you can mound up over top of it.

28 Q Well, how was it done
29 on that particular location?

30 A I don't know.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross- Exam by Scott

1

2

Q Do you know, Dr. Clark?

3

WITNESS CLARK: I don't,

4

sir.

5

Q I take it it was done,

6

was it?

7

WITNESS HARDY: It may not

8

have been.

9

Q Well now, on the

10

alignment sheets, Dr. Clark, there is a reference

11

under numeral following "B" which I understand relates

12

to the buoyancy or the anticipated buoyancy of pipe

13

in the particular route that is referred to on the

14

alignment sheet. Are you familiar with those?

15

WITNESS CLARK: Yes.

16

Q Would you tell us what is

17

referred to by B-1 and B-2 in general terms?

18

A I'd have to and should

19

perhaps take a minute to look exactly at the wording.

20

WITNESS WILLIAMS: First

21

of all, B-0 refers to no buoyancy requirement; B-1

22

refers to - indicates that the stretch covered by

23

that B-1 requires buoyancy, anti-buoyancy measures

24

throughout that length, and the B-2 indicates that

25

within that length there are some potential buoyant

26

areas, but not the whole stretch.

27

Q Yes. Well is then my

28

understanding, Mr. Williams, correct that B-1 means

29

that the area designated requires buoyancy techniques

30

throughout; B-2 indicates that only a proportion of

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the stretch indicated requires some buoyancy technique.

3 A Yes, and that was our
4 best estimate at the time that work was done.

5 Q Yes. Our analysis of the
6 alignment sheets will show that 44% of the route is
7 marked either B-1 or B-2; would that sound to be a
8 fair estimate or are you in any position to judge?

9 A Really I'm not, but
10 I think it refers to potential buoyant areas, not
11 known.

12 Q Yes. We simply calculated
13 B-1 and B-2 and I take it that 44% wouldn't strike
14 you as odd, would it?

15 A This is in the Northwest
16 and Yukon Territories total, is it, Mr. Scott?

17 Q It's from Richards
18 Island to the border. The north-south route.

19 A Yes, I wouldn't argue
20 with you, if you have run through that calculation.

21 Q Now I take it, Dr.
22 Clark, that a 48-inch pipe is obviously going to be
23 more buoyant than a 20-inch pipe such as was used
24 on the Pointed Mountain Pipeline.

25 WITNESS CLARK: Yes, it's
26 also a function of wall thickness, but it would be
27 more buoyant, yes.
28
29
30

Cark, Hollinshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And you have set out some-
2 where in your application or in your responses, some
3 six or seven techniques that the applicant has avail-
4 able to restrain buoyancy?

5 A That's correct.

6 Q Do I understand that in
7 substance, the technique that will be used in most
8 locations, in the vast majority of locations, is
9 burial? Or berming?

10 A Burial would be the most
11 common one.

12 Q Yes. I take it from the
13 figures in your application that concrete weights
14 is in relation to burial, extremely expensive?

15 A Yes, but that concrete
16 weights would be used where open water is' crossed.

17 Q Is that the only place
18 that you presently intend to use it?

19 A To the best of my know-
20 ledge.

21 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

22 A I'm afraid I would have
23 to disagree, Mr. Scott. Concrete weights will be used
24 in more areas than flowing water, did you say?

25 WITNESS CLARK:

26 A Open water.

27 MR. SCOTT:

28 Q Well, what sort of areas
29 do you intend to use it in, Mr. Williams?
30

Clark, Hollinghsead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

2 A I think we've suggested
3 continuous concrete coating in the major river
4 crossings and some of the minor crossings, bott on
5 weights in most of the other minor crossings. Saddle
6 or set on weights in muskeg type terrain, and other
7 areas where they are thought to be the best solution.

8 I wouldn't restrict it to open
9 water situations.

10 Q I take it that as between
11 the two methods, weights and burial, which is judged
12 to be the most satisfactory in terms of reducing
13 buoyancy?

14 A The use of concrete weights
15 is the surest method, the most conservative method.
16 In my opinion.

17 WITNESS HARDY:

18 A I think, Mr. Scott, that
19 it should be recognized that from the designer's
20 point of view, he will use the overburden, the back-
21 filling, you see, if he thinks it is adequate. If
22 the conditions are such that it won't be, why then
23 he talks about other situations, except in the case
24 of the open water and the river crossings, where
25 you may go to complete concrete coating, which is a
26 better system, but out of the river valleys, for
27 example in the Pointed Mountain line and the areas
28 you were referring to where the pipe is floated up,
29 you didn't ask me the cause of the floating. It
30 obviously wasn't, the buoyancy wasn't completely

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 counter-acted. The probable cause of that in that
2 situation was the fact that the backfilling, it was
3 figured to be held down by backfilling, and the back-
4 filling wasn't adequate. It was mostly muskeg, which
5 has very low unit weight.

6 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

7 A Mr. Scott, can we just back
8 up to the previous question with respect to the
9 percentage of total weighting requirement. Is it
10 correct that 40 or 45 percent you arrived at,
11 includes all of the distance, the lengths covered by
12 the B-2 situation?

13 Q All the B-1 and B-2
14 situations on the alignment sheets.

15 A Recognizing that --

16 Q From Richards Island to
17 the Alberta border.

18 A Yes, sir. Recognizing
19 that a B-2 situation is not intended to be weighted
20 or anchored for the full length of that section?

21 Q Yes, I think I understand
22 that the B-2 designation does not indicate that
23 there will necessarily be a buoyancy problem of sub-
24 stantial proportions at every place in the B-2
25 segment?

26 A Right, thank you.

27 Q Now Dr. McRoberts, you --
28 I want to ask a couple of questions of you as a result
29 of your -- a report you have prepared on pipe
30 interaction at single field bends and your report, as

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 I understand it, studies interaction at overbends,
2 that is a bending up and down of the pipe at sidebends
3 and at sag bends, which have already been described
4 as the point at which the pipe bends to cross the
5 river.

6 Now, do I understand correctly
7 that thermal expansion, that is heat expansion, and
8 the pressure of gas in the pipe, both cause a compress-
9 ive force in the pipe?

10 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

11 A Yes, that's correct.

12 Q Yes. And what is the
13 result of that compressive force in just one or two
14 words?

15 A If the pipe is not restr-
16 ained, then depending on the conditions and the amount
17 of compressive load or force in the pipe, then
18 unsafe conditions could ensue.

19 Q Well, what sort of unsafe
20 conditions?

21 A You would get to the point
22 where the serviceability limit in the pipe is exceeded.

23 Q Well, does the pipe move
24 as a result, or may it move as a result?

25 A In the type of
26 calculations we do, we assume some movement of the
27 pipe.

28 Q Yes. Well, how do you --
29 I take it that one of the consequences of this
30 combination of forces, can be that the pipe will rise

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgnstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 out of the ground, or may rise out of the ground?

2 A If the pipe wasn't properly
3 designed, yes.

4 Q And how is that restrained,
5 how is that movement restrained?

6 A In which type of situation
7 are you thinking about?

8 Q Well, let's deal with
9 overbends.

10 A There's two methods of
11 restraint, one takes into account the overburden
12 resistance on the top of the ditch -- excuse me, in
13 the resistance of the soil above the pipe along the
14 ditch; one also takes into account the resistance
15 that is mobilized between the pipe and the surround-
16 ing ditch backfill, the tangential resistance.

17 Q I take it that you found
18 in your report, the latter factor to be relatively
19 minor in terms of control?

20 A We took a conservative
21 value and the range we were at, it had a minor
22 effect, although because we picked a very conservative
23 value it did have a minor effect.

24 Q I take it then that assum-
25 ing a conservative value for that factor, the response
26 in terms of this pipeline is again likely to be
27 calculating the appropriate amount of overburden in
28 each case?

29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A That's
3 correct.

4 Q Yes.

5 A Or limiting the bend
6 angle.

7 Q Or limiting the bend
8 angle. Now Dr. Hardy, do I also understand that
9 at Westcoast and Trans-Canada this problem of the
10 over-bend moving up and out of the surface of the
11 earth has occurred?

12 WITNESS HARDY: When you
13 said "Trans-Canada" did you mean "Trans-Mountain?"

14 Q I think I meant
15 Trans-Canada.

16 A I've had no experience
17 with Trans-Canada.

18 Q Well, let's deal with
19 Westcoast Transmission then. Isn't there a very
20 graphic picture of a case where this has occurred?

21 A An upheaval due to stress?

22 Q A case in which a
23 combination of thermal expansion and gas pressure
24 has led the pipe to move up out of the ground.

25 A I think they have had
26 at least one case of that. It hasn't come within
27 my specific terms of reference with them. They
28 recognize it as being a stress problem. It's rare
29 compared to the floatation case which I have had
30 input into, in the case of the floatation; but I'm

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 sure there's at least one case where this has
3 happened all right.

4 Q Well, Dr. McRoberts,
5 would you agree that in dealing with this pipeline,
6 assuming no remedial measures for the moment, that
7 because the pipeline is a larger diameter, that is
8 48 inches, because the gas will be under higher
9 pressure and bearing in mind the temperature increases
10 between the deep winter and the middle of the
11 summer, that leaving remedial measures aside, that
12 the possibility of this kind of movement of the pipe
13 is greater in this instance than in most other
14 pipelines?

15 WITNESS McROBERTS: The
16 problem is more significant in over-bends. Side
17 bends are by and large the same, although a little
18 worse; but I would say yes, as the pipe gets bigger
19 and the pressure gets larger, it is an inescapable
20 conclusion.

21 Q And I take it the
22 variation in temperatures is also a factor that in-
23 creases the dimension of the problem if there were
24 no remedial measures, from let us say minus 50 degrees
25 when it's constructed in the winter to 50 degrees
26 Fahrenheit in the middle of the following summer.

27 A Yes, but when you talk
28 about 50 in the pipe, you must keep in mind that
29 we are operating or propose to operate a chilled
30 pipeline, and the 50 in the summertime would be a

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 ground temperature in an unchilled, non-chilled line
3 and then you wouldn't have the gas pressure, so by and
4 large given the two numbers that you've quoted, we
5 wouldn't be encountering them.

6 Q Are you telling us that
7 the range of temperatures is not a factor in this
8 phenomena on this pipeline?

9 A Oh yes, but I wasn't
10 agreeing with the two numbers that you gave me,
11 north of 60.

12 Q What you're saying is
13 that the range of temperatures, bearing in mind that
14 the pipe is below ground level, at the start is not
15 likely to be as great as the range that I suggested
16 to you.

17 A What I was suggesting
18 to you was that you take a figure of minus 50 below,
19 I don't think we'd be stringing the pipe together when
20 it was that cold. I think we would stop when it was
21 substantially warmer. That's one end of the scale,
22 the top temperature you mentioned was plus 50, north
23 of 60 we are proposing to operate chilled gas pipeline
24 and the temperatures there won't rise much above
25 25, so the temperature differential then would not
26 be as much as you are considering. However, we could
27 get plus 50 in the pipe, I suppose, prior to start-up,
28 as the ground warmed up; but at the same time we
29 wouldn't have any gas pressure to 1,600 p.s.i.
30 So therefore it wouldn't be fair to say high gas

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross- Exam . by Scott

1
2 pressure and exatt temperature range you mentioned.
3 I would point out that the temperature differentials
4 per se can be a lot higher in pipelines
5 constructed in the wintertime when in the temperate
6 regions of Canada because they don't chill and are
7 operated at a much warmer temperature.

8 Q Isn't it possible that
9 the compressive forces generated in that way could
10 be of a higher order of magnitude than the overburden
11 or the fill?

12 A They could it you
13 weren't designing, Mr. Scott, but we propose --

14 Q If you weren't?

15 A If you were not doing
16 a rational design; we propose to do a rational design
17 as a matter of good engineering practice and wouldn't
18 let that condition develop.

19 Q Well now, Dr. Clark,
20 we've discussed over these days in a general way, three
21 situations in which it is at least conceivable that
22 if there is not adequate design that the pipe can
23 come out of the ground. One is -- or come above
24 the surface of the ground -- one is frost heave, one
25 is compressive forces of the type we've just discussed,
26 and the third is buoyancy, and what I'd like to
27 know is in those circumstance what remedial action
28 is going to be the action of choice?

29 WITNESS CLARK: Well, in
30 all instances the design philosophy is to prevent

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 it coming above the ground under any circumstances.

3 Q Well then, you won't
4 need any remedial action. I understand that, but in
5 the event that one of these predictions plays you
6 false, what is the -- how are you going to remedy it?

7 A Well, in the case of
8 frost heaving, it would occur over a much longer
9 time frame than the other two that you mentioned,
10 and I can't conceive of it happening due to frost
11 heave since we would be monitoring and we could take
12 a remedial measure before it got to within the height
13 of the original ground surface, that we had allowed
14 for it, and that would involve further surcharging
15 during a winter period sometime during the first
16 few years. In the case of the --

17 Q If I could just stop you
18 there for a moment, do I understand then that the
19 only remedy in terms of frost heave and the remedy
20 which you judge to be adequate will be increasing
21 the overburden?

22 A Well, that's not the
23 only one.

24 Q What other ones do
25 you --

26 A Well, two others
27 immediately come to mind that I think we've mentioned
28 them both, and that is a localized melting of ice
29 lenses to allow it to go back down.

30 Q Yes?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A And a third would be a
3 localized freezing, and that is accelerating the
4 penetration of the frost bulb so that the overburden
5 pressure, shut-off pressure is approached much more
6 rapidly,

7 Q I take it that of those
8 three, however, overburden is the remedy of choice.

9 A In a large area that
10 would be the remedy of choice, but on a localized area
11 I would think one of the other two would be more
12 economical.

13 Q Yes. What sort of an
14 area is a localized area, in terms of selecting one
15 of these remedies?

16 A I couldn't put a number
17 on it but I would think something over a few hundred
18 yards.

19 Q Would require over-
20 burden solution?

21 A Would require -- could
22 be any one of those three.

23 Q Something under a couple
24 of hundred yards?

25 A Something within a few
26 hundred yards.

27 Q Within a few hundred
28 yards.

29 A It could be any one of
30 those three.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Well now, I'm sorry,
3 you were just about to go on to one of the others.

4 A Well, the other one is
5 the pipe coming out of the ground due to the forces
6 associated with the difference between the lay-in
7 temperature and operating temperature, and the internal
8 pressure. This of course is a transient problem since
9 it diminishes as the soil freezes and the backfill
10 freezes. Again, the problems associated with effect-
11 ing a remedial measure there would be so great that
12 our design approach would have to be conservative,
13 in other words we are not counting on a remedial measure
14 to accommodate that particular situation in any instance.
15 An unforeseen circumstance, the remedial measures would
16 probably involve -- could be a short shut-down until
17 the repairs were effected, and again it would involve
18 increasing the surcharge load, would be one approach.

19 Q Well, do any other
20 approaches occur to you?

21 WITNESS McROBERTS: Mr. Scott,
22 there is one thing I should also mention with regard
23 to over-bends and sag bends or side bends, one procedure
24 that pipeliners follow as a matter of course is what's
25 called hydrostatic testing, and they use pressures
26 that are in excess of the gas pressure that one uses
27 in the operating line, and in fact the temperature
28 differential to be used in that -- at that time would
29 be higher than the operating pressure. differential.
30 In fact, while we were still in the field we would be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 loading the pipe with a greater pressure --

3 Q You would or you wouldn't
4 be?

5 A We would be loading it
6 in the field while the construction spread is on the
7 ground, as it were, over sections, and we would in
8 fact be proofing the whole design as well.

9 Q Well, Dr. Clark -- thank
10 you -- Dr. Clark, you were going to go on, I think, and
11 mention some other methods.

12 WITNESS CLARK: The first
13 method would be if during the testing and so on that
14 this hadn't been revealed, and I can't conceive of
15 a situation where it wouldn't be, but the --
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Are you speaking of pressure
2 or --

3 A I'm speaking of the com-
4 pressive stresses in the pipe, causing a reaction that
5 would cause it to come up at an overbend, and
6 the one that would come to mind, the first choice,
7 would be increasing the surcharge load. The second
8 would be possibly shutting the system down and dealing
9 with the pipe, replacing it.

10 Q How would you deal with it
11 and replace it?

12 A A section could be removed
13 and replaced, or cut and replaced. I'm not that
14 familiar with the operation and maintenance techniques
15 in that situation.

16 Q I take it that the over-
17 burden solution is one that has to be applied liter-
18 ally in the course of construction rather than later.
19 It's not a solution in short it would be available if
20 the raising^{of}/the pipe is a fait accompli.

21 A If it came right out of
22 the ground, that wouldn't be available, no.

23 Q So, would I be correct
24 to say then that it is a remedy that has to be applied
25 at the same time as the pipe is being laid?

26 A It would normally be part
27 of the design but if during the testing one got an
28 indication of a potential weak area, it could be
29 applied at that time.

30 Q Yes, and the second method

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 I take it is to replace new pipe, is that the solution?

2 A Or to cut out the particular
3 piece affected and put it back down in and replace it.

4 Q Now, what about the third,
5 buoyancy?

6 A Well again the problems
7 associated with remedial measures for buoyancy are
8 pretty severe, which has given us cause to take a very
9 conservative approach.

10 Again, I can't conceive of a
11 situation where we could have buoyancy. Buoyancy is
12 also, in many areas, a transient problem in that once
13 the complete backfill is frozen in, it would no longer
14 be subjected to flooding, except where there is open
15 water.

16 Q Yes, but I take it that
17 with respect to buoyancy, increasing the overburden
18 isn't going to provide a solution, except to create
19 a great mountain of sand or earth?

20 A After it has happened,
21 you mean?

22 Q Yes?

23 A That's correct, it would
24 very unlikely be a solution.

25 Q wouldn't it be true that
26 the only solution in the event that that problem
27 develops, is to retrench and bury the pipe again?

28 A The trench would certainly
29 have to be cleaned out and possibly widened, and the
30 pipe would have to be weighted or else held in the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 ground with some type of anchoring.

2 Q Yes. Is the presence, with
3 respect to a buoyant pipe or a pressure problem pipe,
4 of an ice bulb going to create any difference, the
5 frost bulb?

6 A The frost bulb?

7 Q Yes.

8 A Once the frost bulb is
9 starting, there's no longer access to the water --
10 for the water in sufficient quantity to float the
11 pipe. This is what I meant, that it was a transient
12 problem. Largely associated with the inactive season
13 between construction and time of start-up.

14 Q Dr. Clark, I wonder -- I
15 want to ask you some information about bore holes,
16 and I wonder if you can get before you the first
17 alignment sheet of the cross-delta alignment sheets.
18 It's number 1K0200-1005. I'm sorry, it's not the
19 first one, it's A-0200-1005. Well now I really want
20 to perform a little exercise to see that I understand
21 how you read the bore hole information as it may become
22 significant, when we don't have this panel with us.

23 Now, I take it that at the top
24 of that page are bore hole logs, the quadrilateral
25 boxes that are shown one following the other along
26 the top of the page?

27 A That's correct, yes.

28 Q And the number at the top
29 of the log box refers to the alignment sheet where
30 the same number can be found, and that is the placement

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 of the bore hole, is it?

2 A That's correct, yes.

3 Q And the date I take it
4 below that, is the date on which the bore was taken
5 or the sample was taken? For Example, N 74-800
6 april, 1974 would be the date of that bore?

7 A That's my understanding,
8 yes.

9 Q Yes. Now I also understand
10 that if you know how to read those logs, they show
11 the depth of the various levels of soil as revealed
12 by the bore?

13 A Yes, sir.

14 Q For example, on that log
15 you see the depth 200, 350 and so on? Pardon me,
16 it's 20.

17 A Yes, 20, 35.

18 Q And that bore, for example,
19 is 97 and a half feet, would that be correct?

20 A Yes.

21 Q How does it show the
22 kinds of soil at those various depths?

23 A It's shown by the symbol
24 which relates to the unified classification system.

25 Q And I take it the unified
26 classification system is a traditional system of
27 identifying various soils?

28 A That's correct.

29 Q And I think in the material
30 you have filed, there is a catalogue of what those

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 shorthand abbreviations refer to under that system?

2 A That's correct. There's a
3 legend in the right hand corner. There's some modi-
4 fications to the unified system, but nothing very
5 extensive.

6 Q Now, I take it that the
7 bore hole diagram also shows the amount and form of
8 ice and/or water that's to be found in the soil?

9 A Some do.

10 Q Yes. Could you take one
11 of those and perhaps N-74800 and show us how you
12 determine that from the bore hole log?

13 A Well the shaded portion
14 would indicate that it's frozen for the entire depth.
15 The symbol --

16 THE COMMISSIONER: Just so I'll
17 know where we're at. The bore hole N74-800 was a bore
18 hole that you put down in April, 1974 at the west
19 side of Shallow Bay, where the pipeline -- where the
20 two pipelines, the dual lines, enter Shallow Bay.

21 We're talking about the same
22 thing here?

23 A That's correct.

24 MR. SCOTT: Q How do we determine the
25 form of water, or the presence of water?

26 WITNESS CLARK:

27 A I believe that the right
28 hand column of each of those particular boxes shows
29 the moisture content.

30 Q expressed in percentages,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 I take it?

2 A Percentage of water related
3 to the percentage -- or the weight of water to the dry
4 weight of that particular sample.

5 Q Yes, but out of hundreds?

6 A Percentages, yes.

7 Q Yes. Now, is there inform-
8 ation concerning these bore holes, that is not shown
9 in the diagramatic box on the top of each alignment
10 sheet? For instance, what about the compactness of
11 the sediments? Is there anything that shows that?

12 A The dry density and perhaps
13 outer break limits and grain size distribution would
14 not be shown on this particular log. That would be
15 shown on a full test hole log that would accompany
16 the report, the geotechnical report on this.

17 Q But I take it that that
18 information is available in that book which has been
19 filed?

20 A If those tests were run,
21 and I don't recall to what extent, except I know
22 there were some grain size curves run, and if the
23 normal routine to run, if you have an undisturbed
24 sample, to run a density test as well as outer break
25 limits if it has a plasticity index.

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Would it be correct to
3 say that in the bore hole book that you have filed,
4 if you've got it it's in that book?

5 A Yes sir, it should be.

6 Q If it's not in that book
7 at the date of the filing of the book at least you
8 didn't have it?

9 A That's right.

10 Q Now apart from that,
11 what other kinds of information about bore holes would
12 you normally have?

13 A Well normally you have
14 a visual classification of the soil type in the ice.
15 You might run thaw consolidation tests. You might
16 run strength tests. These are fairly routine tests
17 that we run on occasion when required.

18 Q Now just looking at this
19 sheet, for example, is there any way that you can tell
20 from the sheet whether the sample shown with respect
21 to any bore hole log is undisturbed or a disturbed
22 chip sample?

23 A No, you couldn't tell
24 from this sheet. You would have to go to the original
25 log where there are symbols that indicate whether
26 it's an undisturbed or pored sample.

27 Q Could you just explain
28 briefly the difference between a chip sample and an
29 undisturbed sample?

30 A A chip sample would be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 cuttings that are brought up often by air from the
3 cutting teeth at the bottom of the drill rod, and at
4 various intervals we then put a core barrel, usually
5 in frozen soil we use what's called a core barrel where
6 we core for some number of feet, two to five feet, and
7 that is then brought up and it's packaged and kept in
8 an undisturbed frozen manner until it reaches the
9 laboratory.

10 Q Would it be correct in
11 layman's terms to compare the two this way, an undistur-
12 bed core sample is one in which a dimension of the earth
13 is simply lifted out and remains intact and physically
14 undisturbed until it is analyzed?

15 A That's correct.

16 Q A chip sample, on the
17 other hand, would be a sample, would be the kind of
18 sample that would be produced for example if you used
19 an ordinary drill and got, as you would in the case
20 of wood, shavings coming out the top as the drill went
21 down,

22 A That's correct.

23 Q Do you know what proportion
24 of the drills on which you've relied are based on chip
25 as opposed to core samples?

26 A I haven't made that
27 analysis. The information should be available on the logs.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: But you
29 say, looking at this alignment sheet, we don't know
30 whether these samples are the one or the other type?

Clark, Hillingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

A In fact the alignment
sheet doesn't show where samples were taken.

MR. SCOTT: Except in a general
way.

A In a general way relative
perhaps to the moisture contents, but there could be
more, and the detail logs show all of this information.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, do
you say that this alignment sheet that I'm looking at
doesn't show where the samples were taken? Do you mean
the geographic location throughout?

A No, I'm talking about
depth of any particular bore hole, the intent of these
is not to show that at 4 1/2 feet we took an undisturbed
and at 8 feet we took a chip sample and so on. That's
in the more detailed log that would accompany the
geotechnical data report.

Q But this purports to show
-- all right, what does this purport to show, this
N 74-800?

A It shows --

Q How much farther ahead
are we now that we've gotten it?

A It shows the soil profile.

Q Yes.

A Whether it's frozen or
unfrozen and evidence of visual ice, according to a
classification system and it shows moisture contents.

MR. SCOTT: And the particular

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross -Exam by Scott

depths are shown, aren't they, by reference?

A Yes, to the various
stratification.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, the
soil stratification from 80 feet to 97 1/2 feet you
classified it, what does that mean?

A That means that it is
a silt of low plasticity with a trace of fine sand and
a trace of organic material in it. It's frozen with
some visible ice; moisture content ranges from 31 to
33% within that depth range.

Q I take it because there
is no ice shown at the top of the bore hole, the same
way as appears at N 74-801, that -- N 74-800 was
not actually out on the ice in Shallow Bay?

A That's correct, that
would be back on the dry ground at that time.

MR. SCOTT: Well now, Dr.
Clark, I take it that in the bore hole logs, the ground
ice designations that are used are those that are
laid out in the N.R.C. Technical Memoranda No. 79.

A That's my understanding,
yes.

Q And I also am led to
believe -- and I'm easily led on this sort of subject --
but I'm led to believe that these designations are inten-
ded for use only with respect to undisturbed samples.
That is not with respect to chip samples.

A My understanding is that

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the classification system allows a drilling supervisor,
3 if you like, to give a broad classification of the
4 occurrence of ice and are used of course most reliably
5 with undisturbed samples, but certainly from observing
6 chips, one could get a good feeling within the bounds
7 of the classification system as to the type of ice and
8 quantities of ice there.

9 Q Well, apart from a good
10 feeling, I take it that you would perhaps then agree
11 that there is a potential inaccuracy when these descrip-
12 tions are used with respect to chip samples.

13 A And even with core samples.

14 Q But more so with chip
15 samples. Is there any doubt about that?

16 A That's probably correct,
17 but the classification even of soils where one classifies
18 a sandy silt or a silty sand in the field, is problematic,
19 within small limits.

20 Q Well now I take it that
21 because permafrost is really a temperature phenomena,
22 the physical description of the bore hole sample as
23 either frozen or unfrozen, without any temperature data
24 really doesn't tell the whole story, does it?

25 A No, it doesn't. We normally
26 have -- would like to have occasionally thermister
27 strings in bore holes.

28 Q Yes, and I take it that
29 this is so particularly when the ground temperature is
30 relatively close to the freezing point, a margin there

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

can make an important difference.

A That's correct, yes.

Q Well, how do you get your
temperature data, or do you have it?

A We have temperature data
from a number of thermister strings that are put in
the ground. Several of them date back quite a few years.
We periodically read them. We read them a few hours
after installation as well, or at least at a time
after installation such that it would represent the
equilibrium condition .

Q Well, are those part of
the bore?

A I'm sorry, part of --

Q Are those inserted at the
time the bore is taken, or are you talking about
something entirely different?

A Normally at the time the
bore hole is made.

Q Yes.

THE COMMISSIONER: They tell
you what the temperature is, do they?

A That's right, sir.

MR. SCOTT: And that can be
of significance, I think we've agreed.

A Yes sir.

Q Well, where would you
find it, for example? I don't see any on this
particular sheet, for example, any way of telling the

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

temperature.

A No, it doesn't purport to tell the temperature. We have -- if in this particular series of bore holes a thermister string was installed, it would normally be included with the geotechnical data report.

Q I am advised that on some of the bore hole logs, which are shown on some of the alignment sheets there is a temperature figure. I don't want you to get the page out unless you would consider it helpful, but on bore hole 3033 as it's numbered, there is after it in brackets the figure (88).

A I better have a look at that. 3033, (88).

Q It's on the alignment sheet, the main alignment sheets 1 A-0200-1003.

A What was the first two numbers?

Q 1 A-0200-1003. If you look at the third in, bore hole 3033, do you have that?

A Yes, I have.

Q Now I understand that the figure that appears in brackets in that case, 88, is the number assigned to the probe, the temperature probe, would that be correct?

A That could very well be but I'm not certain of that.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well, what I am concerned
2 to know is how do we tell if you have a temperature
3 reading for any given bore hole, and if you have one,
4 where do we find it? I found one part of the answer
5 for myself.

6 I think if you look at the
7 index page to that book, or the upper left hand
8 corner, it shows the number, the drill hole number,
9 and then following it in brackets, the temperature
10 probe installation number.

11 A That's correct, yes.

12 Q So, am I correct then that
13 in those cases where you have a temperature probe
14 installed, that it will be shown that you have one
15 on the bore hole?

16 A It should be, yes.

17 Q Yes. Now, where will we
18 find the temperatures?

19 A They should be in the
20 geotechnical data report.

21 Q My information, Dr. Clark,
22 based on account, is that there are only some 22
23 temperature probes on the entire route. Do you
24 have any information as to whether that is reasonably
25 correct?

26 A No, that's not correct.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: There would
28 be more, would there?

29 A Yes, sir.

30 I believe in direct evidence I

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 stated that my estimate was around 100, and I think
2 it's between 100 and 120.

3 MR. SCOTT:

4 Q Well, we've added them up
5 in this method on the alignment sheets, and we find
6 that there are four at Swimming Point; there is seven
7 near Norman Wells or in that area; and that there
8 are only about 10 others elsewhere along the entire
9 length of the route.

10 What I would ask you to do,
11 and I don't suppose it has to be done today, is to
12 figure out whether there are temperature probes
13 other than those disclosed on the bore hole
14 diagrams, and if there are, put us in touch with some
15 kind of way of figuring out where they are and what
16 they read.

17 A I would be happy to do that,
18 and not all of the bore holes, of course, fall within
19 the alignment sheet window with the temperature probes,
20 but we do have a summary of all of these, when they
21 read, at different periods of the season, how long
22 they have been in operation and what the temperatures
23 were, so I would be happy to provide that.

24 Q Well perhaps what you can
25 do first, is to determine whether my way of finding
26 out the information with respect to the windows on
27 the alignment sheets is correct, and then determine
28 whether there is temperature information beyond the
29 window?

30 A Yes, we can double check

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 that.

2 Q In short, what we want is
3 temperatures on the routds, not temperatures that may
4 be found in bore holes elsewhere.

5 A By elsewhere, I'm sure you
6 would be happy with one in any given physiographic region.

7 Q If it's the only one you've
8 got, I guess we are going to have to learn to live
9 with it.

10 A Some of the initial geomet-
11 stations were selected, as I understand it, to repre-
12 sent a particular climatological region within a
13 physiographic division.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, if
15 there is this discrepancy, Dr. Clark, 20 temperature
16 readings, ^{apparent} from an examination of the alignment sheets,
17 and yet you did 120 or thereabouts, are you saying
18 that there must be 100 temperature readings that were
19 taken along the route, but not within the window that
20 we're looking through when we look at these alignment
21 sheets?

22 A That's one possibility;
23 the other possibility is that some of the temperature
24 probe numbers might have been inadvertently left off.
25 I would think that the first is more common, and that
26 they would be outside this present alignment sheet
27 window.

28 Q This one we're looking at
29 is the crossing of Shallow Bay. That's the longest
30 river crossing, the widest river crossing in this

1 whole route, isn't it?

2 A Yes, sir.

3 Q And how wide is Shallow
4 Bay at this point?

5 A I believe it's about four
6 and a half miles.

7 Q And it is shallow, we are
8 led to believe, but these holes that you drilled in
9 Shallow Bay, and there are only three of them actually
10 beyond the shore on each side, appear to be very
11 shallow holes. Fourteen feet, eight feet and eight
12 feet.

13 Now, if I'm not reading this
14 correctly, let me know, but would those holes take
15 you to the depth at which the pipe is to be buried
16 across Shallow Bay?

17 A The objective of those
18 holes, sir, was to find out how deep the bottom was
19 frozen. But they wouldn't take us to the depth that
20 we would propose to bury.

21 Q Well, nowhere then between
22 one side of Shallow Bay and the other is there any
23 bore hole that actually took you to the depth at which
24 the pipe is to be buried?

25 A No sir, that was due to the
26 type of rig that was being used, which as I understand
27 it, could not sample unfrozen soil. Once we go through
28 the frozen material, there was little to be learned
29 about going to deeper with that particular rig. This
30 was a preliminary type of investigation where our

1 intent was to observe where the banks were frozen for
2 the full depth and during this period, how far frost
3 penetrated below the ice cover into the bottom in those
4 shallow regions.

5 Q Well then, this crossing
6 which is the longest crossing that you face along
7 the whole route, you have no bore holes that tell you
8 what the composition of the soil is beneath the river
9 crossing, beneath the crossing of the bay?

10 A These holes don't tell us
11 that, other than by extrapolation from the on-shore
12 condition to the off-shore condition . There may be
13 holes by others in that area that we have available
14 to us, but I'm not certain of that.

15 MR. SCOTT:

16 Q Dr. Clark, the difficulty
17 that confronts me is this: One of the concerns that is
18 raised, has been that there may be permafrost below
19 Shallow Bay, and because -- no, let me begin again.

20 The concern that has been raised
21 is that if there is no permafrost below Shallow Bay,
22 there may be a frost heave problem with respect to
23 the pipe under Shallow Bay. Now, whether that concern
24 is accurate or not, or worthwhile or not, I take it
25 that at the moment, you have no way of determining
26 whether there is permafrost below Shallow Bay, accord-
27 ing to these drill holes?

28 A These drill holes wouldn't
29 tell us that, but historically in that area with that
30 large open body of water, where it doesn't freeze over

1 the whole area, we would not expect to find permafrost.

2 My understanding is that we
3 have discussed this with, for instance, with Dr.
4 MacKay and have gathered information from him as well
5 as our bore holes.

6 Q Well, he doesn't have any
7 drill holes, does he?

8 A I'm not sure that he does
9 not. I think he has available to him, a lot of drill
10 hole records in the delta.

11 Q Well, the response that
12 some members of the panel have made with respect to
13 the problem of frost heave below Shallow Bay, as I
14 understand it, is that even if there isn't permafrost
15 there, and even if frost heave is potential, that the
16 sediments are compacted, and therefore the chance of
17 frost heave is reduced, I'm sorry, uncompacted, and
18 the frost bulb is going to compact them down and
19 therefore not heave up. Isn't that the sort of theory
20 that is given to us.

21 A That's part of it, and the
22 other part is they tend to be fairly sandy, or silts
23 of very low plasticity which have low shut-off
24 pressures.

25 Q Well, assuming you
26 were to find out that Shallow Bay is in fact without
27 permafrost, have you any way of telling whether the
28 sediments are compacted or not?

29 A We have assumed that it's
30 without permafrost, because it's the most conservative

1 the whole area, we would not expect to find permafrost.

2 My understanding is that we
3 have discussed this with, for instance, with Dr.
4 MacKay and have gathered information from him as well
5 as our bore holes.

6 Q Well, he doesn't have any
7 drill holes, does he?

8 A I'm not sure that he does
9 not. I think he has available to him, a lot of drill
10 hole records in the delta.

11 Q Well, the response that
12 some members of the panel have made with respect to
13 the problem of frost heave below Shallow Bay, as I
14 understand it, is that even if there isn't permafrost
15 there, and even if frost heave is potential, that the
16 sediments are compacted, and therefore the chance of
17 frost heave is reduced, I'm sorry, uncompacted, and
18 the frost bulb is going to compact them down and
19 therefore not heave up. Isn't that the sort of theory
20 that is given to us.

21 A That's part of it, and the
22 other part is they tend to be fairly sandy, or silts
23 of very low plasticity which have low shut-off
24 pressures.

25 Q Well, assuming you
26 were to find out that Shallow Bay is in fact without
27 permafrost, have you any way of telling whether the
28 sediments are compacted or not?

29 A We have assumed that it's
30 without permafrost, because it's the most conservative

1 assumption, and yes, we will be doing drilling programs
2 there, but we will be using specially designed
3 piston samplers for instance, to get undisturbed
4 samples which will tell us density.

5 Q Yes --

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Specially
7 designed what?

8 A Piston samplers. You see,
9 in compacted soils of deltaic deposits are very
10 hard to sample but there has been equipment designed,
11 my understanding is that it's been used off-shore in
12 the delta deposits very successfully with a hundred
13 percent recovery that would be suitable for sampling
14 these types of soils. But it's not a routine matter
15 to get a good, undisturbed sample of a very loose
16 deposit.

17 We feel now though, and have
18 consulted with people specializing in that type of
19 equipment, that the equipment is available to do that
20 now.

21 MR. SCOTT:

22 Q Well, would it be correct
23 to summarize the question of frost heave under Shallow
24 Bay this way, that there is no bore hole information
25 that tells us at this point in time whether there is
26 permafrost under there or not?

27 A There's none indicated in
28 our alignment sheets, Mr. Scott.

29 Q All right. And in the
30 second place, if there were no permafrost and the
potential for frost heave was therefore there, there

Clark, Hollingshead, Mcroberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 is no information that tells us whether the condition
2 for your response, namely uncompacted soils, are
3 there or not?

4 A No, we are not relying on
5 the soils being of low relative density. We're relying
6 more on the shut-off pressure and if necessary, we can
7 go to a deeper burial. We think that the fact that
8 they have low relative density will assist us in the
9 frost^{effects} assessment or potential, that it would have less
10 potential. There is evidence of this, substantial
11 evidence, that very, very loose silt deposits develop
12 ice lenses, but not much of a heaving pressure.
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Isn't this, Dr. Clark,
3 another specific instance of an area in which much more
4 intensive drilling is going to have to be done before
5 final design?

6 A Yes, we will be doing
7 much more drilling here before final design.

8 Q And I take it that in
9 connection with that you will have to do much more
10 testing of temperature or determination of temperature from
11 spot the spot on the routes.

12 A We would do some more,
13 yes.

14 Q Now, with respect to
15 those additional bore holes that you will put in, you
16 and the other witnesses have told us of specific
17 kinds of problems areas where you would contemplate
18 bore holes. Do I also understand that you are going
19 to do additional bore hole work on the overland areas
20 of the route too, and I'm leaving out the rivers and
21 the slopes and the particular problem areas.

22 A In some areas, yes.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Dr.
24 Clark, the only bore holes beneath Shallow Bay itself
25 were the bore holes that you put down to determine how
26 deep the bay was.

27 A No, how deep the frost
28 penetrated. We determined the depth of the bay by
29 soundings.

30 Q To determine how deep

Clark, Hillingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 the frost was?

3 A How deep the ground was
4 frozen into the bottom, yes, at those holes.

5 Q All right. Now those
6 holes were done in April, 1974, a year ago.

7 A Yes sir.

8 Q And there have been no
9 holes drilled since to which you can refer the Inquiry.

10 A Some of these holes were
11 drilled in September of '74.

12 Q I'm looking at the holes --

13 A Oh, the ones in the
14 middle? No, they would be --

15 Q No, the holes from one
16 side of Shallow Bay to the other, leaving aside those
17 clusters right at the shoreline.

18 A Yes, those were drilled
19 in April of '74, and on the other side there were some
20 drilled in September, but no holes were drilled in the
21 open water in September.

22 MR. SCOTT: well, Dr. Clark,
23 let's leave aside the problem areas such as river
24 crossings and marginally unstable or potentially stable
25 slopes or whatever they are, and areas of that type
26 that have been discussed with particularlity, and let's
27 just deal with the overall route. Now, you have told
28 us that some bore hole drilling will be done on the
29 overland portions of the route.

30 A That's correct.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q Now what I'd really like
3 to get from you is some kind of indication of how often
4 it will be done, what the spacing will be between the
5 bore holes as you move to final design.

6 A There's no possibility
7 we could give you that indication. For one thing we
8 will be doing geophysical surveys in certain areas that
9 will only, after that is done we will determine that.
10 In many lengths of the route, I am sure, we will not
11 require any additional bore holes.

12 Q Well, the recommendation
13 of the Department of Public Works, as you may know, for
14 the Mackenzie Highway, is that on the route bore
15 holes should be taken every 1,000 feet or approximately
16 5 to a mile. Now, are you going to have the spacing
17 program of any type at all like that, or what?

18 A Not as a generalized
19 rule like that, because their requirements are so much
20 different from ours.

21 Q Well, what concerns me
22 for example, is that if you look on the alignment
23 sheets for the cross-delta route, you find for example,
24 that the bore holes you have are quite often three or
25 four miles apart, and there is one space of some 30 or
26 32 miles where there aren't any bore holes at all.
27 Now, what is going to be done about that?

28 A Where is the 32 miles
29 where there are no bore holes?

30 Q The easy way to find it

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 is to refer to Mr. Williams' summary, I think. I
3 can perhaps find the sheets for you. By Travaillant
4 Lake, we start on sheet No. 1 L-0200-1017.

5 MR. MARSHAL: Is that Exhibit 87 to
6 which you're referring?

7 "Drill hole data for pipeline routing in
8 Yukon Territories and Northwest Territories."

9 MR. SCOTT: It's the alternative
10 cross-delta routing alignment sheets.

11 MR. MARSHAL: The information as to the
12 drill hole data, is that Mr. Williams' summary of that?

13 MR. SCOTT: That isn't where we got
14 the 30 miles, but I think it's reflected in that.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: I think that
16 was an exhibit. Do you have it, Miss Hutchison?

17 MR. SCOTT: We have analyzed
18 on the basis of this information that just near Travail-
19 lant Lake there is about 30 miles where there are no
20 bore holes at all, and I wouldn't be perturbed about
21 that because you've told us that much more is going to
22 be done. I'm anxious, if I can, to get a statement from
23 you about how it's going to be spaced?

24 A The spacing is normally
25 a function of the variability of the terrain. The
26 homogeneity, and what other information is available in
27 that general area.

28 Q Well, do I understand that
29 it is not possible for you on that basis to give any
30 other answer?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A Not right at this time
3 because I don't think we can generalize on spacing.

4 Q So that I suppose it's
5 conceivable that you might go ahead to final design
6 and have an area of 30 miles where there are no bore
7 holes.

8 A That's inconceivable to
9 me.

10 Q Well, why is that incon-
11 ceivable?

12 A Well, it's just normally
13 that I can only think of one area where there is a long
14 stretch now with no bore holes, and I'm not sure that
15 it's Travaillant Lake. Again there was a lateral shift
16 there, so as I say, there are no bore holes, you can
17 say there's none in this alignment sheet window. The
18 terrain units ^{would} no doubt have bore holes.

19 Q No, but I put it to you
20 that it's inconceivable because you would agree surely,
21 that one of the principal sources of your information
22 as to the quality of the soil and its iciness or not
23 in the ditch and in some areas more important below
24 the ditch is to be found from the bore holes.

25 A Not exclusively.

26 Q Not exclusively, but
27 it's one of your principal sources of information.

28 A It's a ground truthing
29 as we have used them now, but it's not the only tool
30 we use.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Why do you regard the
standard as selected by the Department of Public Works
for the Mackenzie Highway as inappropriate to a gas
pipeline?

A Well, the criteria for a
highway is just so much different than for digging a
ditch.

Q For digging a ditch and
putting a pipeline in it, is that what you're saying?

A Yes, the criteria for the
highway is just much different.

Q Well, when you say "the
criteria", what do you mean, the government criteria?

A No, the requirements for
a highway design.

THE COMMISSIONER: You mean
the criteria of good engineering practice, is that it?

A Yes, they are concerned
with the fill that they are building up has to have
certain structural qualities, and they require support
from the sub-grade whether in a thawed or frozen
condition.

MR. SCOTT: Well, mightn't it
be so, Dr. Clark, that there is little criteria for
good engineering design in chilled buried pipelines
in this country? That's obvious, isn't it, at this
stage?

A No, I think the criteria
have
we established is good.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 Q No, I shouldn't have used
3 "criteria" perhaps in that sense, but the experience.

4 A The experience is limited
5 to the test sites.

6 Q Yes, and that therefore
7 at least in this sense you are proceeding on a voyage
8 in which there are a good number of unknowns.

9 A It's a matter of level of
10 detail. I don't see any major unknowns. For instance
11 the drilling of test holes, unless it can reveal some
12 significant information that we don't have, even though
13 I like drilling lots of test holes, I would be
14 irresponsible if I recommended something that wasn't
15 appropriate.

16 Q Yes. Do you make the
17 same observation with respect to the areas of discon-
18 tinuous permafrost?

19 A No, it becomes a little
20 more important in discontinuous permafrost than con-
21 tinuous.

22 Q Well, is it -- am I
23 correct to understand that what is really happening here
24 is that you are placing your reliance not on mile by
25 mile bore hole analysis, but rather on the geothermal
26 computer analysis?

27 A Not entirely, no. We have
28 the terrain typing as well.

29 Q Well, leave aside the
30 terrain typing for the moment, isn't it reasonably

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 clear that you're putting your eggs in the geothermal
3 analysis basket?

4 A Only for the ground
5 temperature regime.

6 Q Well now, in the evidence
7 given by panel 1, we were told -- I don't have the
8 reference for the moment so you'll have to take my
9 word for it -- but as you move toward final design
10 there would be a progressive upgrading of the terrain
11 typing on the alignment sheets. Is that your under-
12 standing of what will happen?

13 A My understanding of what
14 will happen is that the analysis of terrain typing that
15 we have done now, which includes all of the bore hole
16 information that has been made available to us, would
17 be updated as any more bore hole information becomes
18 available.
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q It's not going to be up-
2 dated any other way, is it?

3 A I don't follow that
4 question.

5 Q But panel one tells us
6 that it's going to be updated.

7 A Yes.

8 Q You have told us, and your
9 panel has told us, that there will be more bore holes
10 at specific locations where there are problems, and
11 that there will be some more bore holes where there
12 are changes in terrain, but you're unable to say, at
13 this moment, how many.

14 I take it there is no other
15 way in which this terrain typing can be effectively
16 upgraded?

17 A It could be upgraded by a
18 couple of other ways, one is by on the ground
19 reconnaissance, both by ourselves and others in areas
20 where there is some question now as to the terrain
21 typing. We have given a number of those examples in
22 one of the reports listed, I don't have the number,
23 where we compared the terrain typing with the G.S.C.,
24 surficial geology work for instance.

25 We would also have our geo-
26 physical studies that would be informative.

27 Q So that the updating is
28 going to depend on reconnaissance, the geophysical
29 studies and bore holes?

30 A Yes, sir.

1 Q And I take it that you're
2 not in a position at the moment to tell us how much
3 of any of this will be done?

4 A Not at the moment, that
5 is one of the studies we are undertaking now.

6 Q I note, for example, that
7 on the cross-delta route, the terrain typing map
8 show the whole delta to be one terrain type, I think
9 it's MRD, or something like that. Isn't that a classic
10 case where more sophisticated terrain typing may be
11 required as you go towards final design?

12 A MRD is the Mackenzie River
13 Delta.

14 Q Yes, that's the terrain
15 type, and you know, the whole delta is shown as one
16 terrain type. I'm sure I couldn't have told you that
17 in advance, but you know, it doesn't seem to me
18 that it's very sophisticated mapping at that level.

19 A I believe the bore holes
20 show a relatively homogeneous material through there.
21 There may be subtleties in soil types that would be
22 of interest to us, but it's pretty homogeneous.

23 Q So do I understand then
24 that you don't contemplate any upgrading in that
25 area?

26 A We certainly contemplate
27 additional bore holes.

28 Q How many?

29 A As many as required to
30 effect the final safe design.

3619
Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q I guess I will get through
2 this one way or the other.

3 When are you going to have
4 that information?

5 A On the Mackenzie -- the
6 delta bore holes?

7 Q The whole shebang, what
8 your bore hole program is going to be?

9 A I'm trying to recall our
10 schedule. As I'm sure you realize by now, we do
11 this I think, in a very logical way.

12 Q You are not asking me to
13 answer that, are you?

14 A I believe the plan, the
15 project plan calls for us to have our final field
16 drilling programs pretty well outlined within this
17 year, and some of them will be initiated this year.

18 Q Well now, one or two
19 other matters. Are the alignment sheets for final
20 design to be prepared on a larger or a bigger scale
21 than the present ones?

22 A They will be orthophoto-
23 mosaics at a scale of one inch to a thousand feet,
24 with approximately a two and a half mile strip centred
25 on the line contoured.

26 Q What's the contour interval?

27 A It varies, along the line,
28 I'm going back to recollection here, I believe it's
29 five feet, but at specific sites it would be down
30 to two and a half feet.

1 Q Well now the present sheets
2 have a profile I think at the top, which has I gather,
3 been prepared from information available on existing
4 maps; you're familiar with that?

5 A Yes, that's correct.

6 Q When would the Survey in
7 your sequence ordinarily be prepared and shown on the
8 profile?

9 A The actual field survey?

10 Q Yeah, or when is the --
11 is there going to be a survey done that will provide
12 on the maps a survey profile, apart from topographic
13 maps?

14 A Yes, that's my understand-
15 ing.

16 Q Yes.

17 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

18 A When the orthophoto mosaics
19 are obtained, of course that will provide a much more
20 accurate profile than what we have shown now. During
21 the time of the location survey and on the ground
22 profile will also be taken.

23 Q Yes, I take it that for
24 the purposes of final design, the orthophoto maps are
25 going to provide the profile? You won't have done
26 any surveying at that stage?

27 A I would think for a good
28 percentage of the route, if there is some areas that
29 required some more detailed field work, certainly it
30 would be done.

Clark, Hollinshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And I take it just so I'll
2 understand it, orthophoto maps are just more precisely
3 detailed and sophisticated maps or photographs than a
4 topographic map or an aerial survey map, might be?

5 A Yes, the photographic
6 window will be similar, but as Dr. Clark has just
7 described, to a different scale than what we have
8 shown in the application, and they will be photograph-
9 ically assembled on the sheet in a manner that will
10 give you a much truer picture of physical features
11 and so forth. It takes out the distortion of the
12 photography, so that the mosaics can be -- you can
13 use a scale on them, for instance, to much better
14 accuracy than the ones that we have submitted.

15 Q Well now, in your evidence
16 you have, Dr. Clark, reported that after the pipeline
17 ditch has been excavated, you will prepare a geological
18 profile of the route, I presume/^{made}from the ditch
19 itself?

20 WITNESS CLARK:

21 A We would collect pertinent
22 data from the ditch and incorporate it into a data
23 retrieval system.

24 Q Yes. Now, in the canned
25 evidence, I don't have the page, you refer -- and I
26 just want to be clear, to the preparation of that
27 catalogue, as you call it, prior to and during con-
28 struction.

29 A Yes.

30 Q Now, does prior to mean

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 sometime prior to, or does it mean simply immediately
2 after the ditch is dug and immediately before the
3 pipe is buried?

4 A No, the system will have
5 all of the information that we have now, incorporated
6 into it before the start of construction, and it
7 will also include any additional bore holes that we
8 do for the pipeline or ancillary facilities prior to
9 the start of construction.

10 During construction it would
11 include any bore holes put down at that time, plus
12 the significant observations along the ditch.

13 Q But I take it that that
14 catalogue, whatever its later utility may be, is not
15 going to be available as a design tool?

16 A It would be available as
17 a design tool with all of the current information
18 in it. At the end of each field program, for example,
19 all of that data would be included in the data
20 retrieval system.

21 Q I'm sorry, I haven't
22 made myself clear. I understood from your evidence,
23 and the canned evidence, that a detailed catalogue,
24 a geological profile after the ditch has been excavated,
25 will be prepared, and it was indicated in the canned
26 evidence that it would be prepared prior to and during
27 construction. I'm trying to get in between the prior
28 (to and the during. I take it's not going to be
29 prepared sufficiently in advance of construction
30 that it will be a design tool?

3622
Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Copper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A It's under preparation
2 now, as I understand it, so as a matter of convenience
3 to recall, by using a computer, any information
4 we require that is available in a certain area.

5 Q Apart from bore holes, you
6 stretches of
7 don't intend to dig any/trench or dig into the ground
8 as a design tool?

9 A No, sir, no.

10 Q I'm concerned about the
11 relationship between the design forces available to
12 you, and the construction forces, and I take it
13 that it's obvious that the responsibility for build-
14 ing the pipeline on the ground is going to lie in
15 the hands in a staff of construction engineers?

16 A Yes, sir.

17 Q And that will be an entirely
18 different route than the design engineers?

19 A My understanding is that
20 the design engineers will have the responsibility to
21 see that their designs are properly implemented.

22 Q Well, now what does that
23 mean in precise terms? Is this panel going to go
24 out on the route from day to day?

25 A I would suspect that
26 certain members of this panel will do just that, but
27 there will also be a trained staff, inspection staff,
28 who would be directed by members of this panel,
29 among others.

30 They would be guided by the
Design Change Manual, as well as the design manual.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well, I won't ask for
2 volunteers from the panel to spend that long winter
3 in the north, but do I understand you to say that a
4 design engineering monitoring group is going to be
5 formed?

6 A The nucleus of this
7 exists now, to ensure the quality control of construct-
8 ion, ^{that} our designs are implemented in the manner in
9 which we intended.

10 In other words, we have the
11 responsibility for the design. We will also have the
12 responsibility to see that they are properly
13 implemented.

14 Q Well to whom is that
15 group going to report?

16 A That group would, I believe,
17 report to Canadian Arctic Gas through Northern
18 Engineering.

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q And --

WITNESS HARDY: If I may be
of help here, Mr. Scott, this matter has been the subject
for discussion in the Board of Directors of N.E.S.
Now they have actually had no instruction from Canadian
Arctic Gas to proceed with an organization to do the
necessary inspection, but they are giving it study. It's
not a thing that has been neglected, I can assure you,
and it's not going to be a matter of this panel going
out and doing the inspection themselves. The situation
in terms of manpower will be something comparable to
what there is during the design as compared to myself
in the old days as a one-man operation attempting to
do it.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, this
area of supervision and control during construction is
of course one that can come up with the construction
panel and again with the company policy witness we've
undertaken to produce at the end of this phase.

MR. SCOTT: It will be dealt
with by the construction panel and they will no doubt
have their own views about how this design corps of
monitors are going to act, and I'll be interested to
hear that. I'm also interested to hear how the design
group feels this design corps of monitors is going to
act. For example, Dr. Clark, if they are dissatisfied
with the construction work that the company constructing
the pipeline is doing, what are they going to do?

WITNESS CLARK: Well, they

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 would immediately make known their dissatisfaction in
3 the same way that we do on any other project where we
4 have responsibility for design.

5 Q To whom?

6 A Presumably to Canadian
7 Arctic Gas.

8 Q Well, what I'm concerned
9 about is, have any plans been laid for co-ordinating
10 the construction responsibility and the design supervision
11 responsibility?

12 A No detailed plans, but we
13 have been told that we have the responsibility to see
14 that our designs are properly implemented.

15 Q What sort of manpower
16 do you think you're going to have in this design monitor-
17 ing group?

18 A That again is under study
19 now and I believe there are some preliminary estimates,
20 but I don't know the figures, Mr. Scott.

21 Q Does anyone on the panel
22 know the figures?

23 A I rather doubt it, since
24 this work is going on by other members of our staff
25 while we've been here for the last several weeks.

26 Q Well, I'm sorry I've
27 kept you in the dark, Dr. Clark.

28 WITNESS HARDY: Well, Mr. Scott,
29 --

30 Q Dr. Hardy, do you know?

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Copper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 A As a director of N.E.S.
3 the sort of figure we have been talking about is up
4 the order of several hundred, something like eight or
5 900 people, and there has been --

6 Q Monitoring design, is that --

7 A The increase in staff of
8 N.E.S. to look after the inspection of the construction
9 that they are now designing, and that is under
10 Committee study by N.E.S., despite the fact that they
11 haven't any actual contract to go ahead and recruit this
12 staff; but I personally have given consideration to
13 what the situation will be in the geotechnical end, if
14 we have to provide what we think might be the adequate
15 inspection to be sure that our designs are looked after,
16 you see.

17 Q What is the estimate as
18 to the number of engineers, Dr. Hardy, that you judge
19 will be required to perform this geotechnical monitoring
20 service?

21 A Well, the figure, you see
22 at the Committee level, you see, just as almost an eye-
23 ball figure as to what we may need, it could be in
24 the order of 80 or 100, but these are not Ph.D's in the
25 field of geotechnical engineering. These are inspection
26 type staff, plus engineering staff that have the
27 necessary background to supervise the work.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Dr.
29 Hardy, you said 800 a minute ago. Now you say 80 or
30 90, and I gather of this 80 or 90, some may be

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 engineers and some may be people of lesser qualifications.
3 I don't know whether that's adequate or excessive, but
4 --

5 A The discrepancy, I think,
6 sir, is that with the 800, that order of figure, that
7 is the manpower requirements that N.E.S. in their first
8 approach, that's Northern Engineering Services, for
9 the complete operation I'm thinking about. Dealing
10 with the geotechnical work, we can see that we might
11 have the order-- it's down around the figure of 80 to
12 100, you see. In other words, they're pipe inspectors.
13 We would not be providing pipe inspectors. The smaller
14 figure is the people that would be trained to deal
15 with the soil conditions that we need to watch.

16 Q But you would have
17 people who are not qualified as professional engineers?

18 A OH yes, yes.

19 Q Studying soil conditions
20 and inspecting pipe. Now that may be entirely in accord-
21 ance with good engineering practice, but in any event
22 the figure you gave us, 80 to 100, would include the
23 majority perhaps of people not qualified as professional
24 engineers.

25 A There would be all
26 grades, you see, and there would be a preponderance of
27 people that are the technician type, or trained
28 specifically for the job. It would be quite unreal-
29 istic, you see, to suppose that we could put -- get
30 the number of professional engineers that, if we have

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

1
2 to staff all of these positions, with professional
3 engineers.

4 Q Oh yes, I understand that.

5 A There will have to be,
6 this is part of the game of course, but how can you
7 overcome that? I've had some experience with this
8 very thing myself some years ago, and you can actually
9 train a man to do a man to do a specific job.

10 MR. SCOTT: Well, Dr. Hardy,
11 just so I'll have it clear, and recognizing that the
12 plan is in its opening stages, how many qualified
13 geotechnical engineers do you think are going to be
14 working or should be working on this pipeline route
15 to do this monitoring work?

16 A Should be, you say?

17 Q Yes.

18 A Well, we would actually
19 take all we could get.

20 Q Well, how many is all
21 you could get, if there was an unlimited market, what
22 is the number that you need to do the job?

23 WITNESS CLARK: We have those figures
24 Mr. Scott, but they are not here with us.

25 Q Well, Dr.
26 Hardy seemed to have some.

27 WITNESS CLARK: Well, at a
28 broad scale, for instance, we now have in the profes-
29 sional geotechnical staff in the 30's, between 30 and
30 40 people now.

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
that would include you gentlemen as well?

A Just those of us from
Northern Engineering, yes sir.

Q Well, that's about four
or five.

A Four of us in the geo-
technical area. We have been increasing this --

MR SCOTT: You may have to
conscript some of those professors.

A We will be increasing
this year, I believe the number is up to about 55. Those
will be people that will be working on design and on
field work. We have a number of people in the field now
on field work, and as we build up and do our field
work, we will have a large number of people assigned
to field drilling programs and logically these are
the same people that will follow through on the inspec-
tion. They are familiar with the soils; with the north,
with the environment, working on the geotechnical inspec-
tion aspect of it.

Q Well, what I am interested
in is how many -- and take round figures, if you want,
do you think are required to provide inspection by
geotechnical engineers as the pipeline is constructed,
not while it's being designed or anything like that, but
as it's being constructed?

A Well I'm reluctant to take
round figures when we have available actual figures

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper
Hardy, Williams
Cross-Exam by Scott

per spread of the people we feel will be
required in the field.

Q All right. Well now do
you prefer to give the precise figures? I'm grateful
for that. I take it that in those precise figures we're
going to have a breakdown of the people who are
geo-technical engineers and other inspectors.

A Yes.

Q all right, and I take it
that the geotechnical engineers who follow construction
will be responsible for two things, perhaps among others,
the on-site verification of the -- that the work shown
in the design drawings is being done --

A Yes.

Q -- and I take it that
they will also be responsible for any modification
of the configuration of the various designs as is
required.

A Yes, working in conjunc-
tion with the field engineering supervisory staff.

THE COMMISSIONER: Would this
be a convenient time to adjourn for a minute?

MR. SCOTT: If you will give
me five minutes I may be finished. There may be some
re-examination, I don't know, but --

I suggest, sir, that we have
the adjournment now, if that's O.K.

THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
we will adjourn for a few minutes.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT:

Q Dr. Clark, just to clear one matter that was dealt with before the break, have we got your assurance that the people who will be doing the modification or clarification of the design as required, as it may be required during construction, will be qualified geotechnical engineers?

A Yes sir, that's our intent.

Q Perhaps with not the same experience in terms of years, but with the same technical qualifications as this panel?

A And perhaps even better.

Q Oh, it boggles the mind.

Dr. McRoberts, the other day I asked you a series of questions about the expected behaviour of the pipe prior to starting, in the event that there was a cracking of frozen ground during the extreme weather. For the purposes of the record, the answer in the transcript contains at page 3433, in Volume XXVII,

Now, we understand that the pipe will, in some circumstances, be installed using controlled flooding, so that in fact in the worst case, the pipe would be completely surrounded by water, frozen water, ice. Does that lead you to make any further comments with respect to your answer?

3632

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

2 A First of all I did say,
3 I believe I said, in my -- in response to one of
4 your questions, that in fact that was the worst case.
5 We will --

6 Q And your answer still
7 stands?

8 A Well, yes. I also point
9 out that the test facility that I mentioned in
10 Alaska, Prudhoe Bay, in that test facility they also
11 flooded the backfill.

12 Q Well, I read your answer
13 a little differently than you do. Take the worst
14 case, that is the case --

15 A Perhaps I could see what
16 I said.

17 MR. MARSHALL: What's the page
18 reference, please, Mr. Scott?

19 MR. SCOTT: 3433 where the
20 answer is,

21 "Well, I wouldn't agree with
22 that comment at all. First of all, the amount
23 of load that could be thrown on the pipe is
24 governed by the backfill around the pipe.
25 Now, in the worst conditions that one could
26 conceive of is that the pipe would be com-
27 pletely surrounded by ice. By and large
28 what we would be doing is digging a ditch
29 and putting the native backfill back into
30 the ditch, and/the time involved prior to

1 start-up, the pipe would be held, it would
2 be surrounded by loosely compacted backfill
3 that may have thawed and refrozen here and
4 there".

5 A And then I say,
6 "In the upper limit, the
7 amount of load that could be transferred
8 wouldn't be, in my estimation, no more than
9 60 or 70 pounds per square inch".

10 I am referring to there, line
11 8 above that, where I say

12 "Now, in the worst condition
13 that one could conceive of is that the pipe
14 would be completely surrounded by ice".

15 I qualify that by saying by and large, we wouldn't
16 be surrounding the pipe completely ^{by ice} although I do
17 understand as an option we would consider flooding
18 the ditch as a buoyancy control measure.

19 Q Well let me ask you this:
20 Does your judgment about the situation vary if the
21 pipe is completely surrounded by ice as a result of
22 controlled flooding?

23 A There's a difference, but
24 -- there's a difference between fully flooded, and
25 non flooded or just native backfill, but even under
26 the worst conditions, I am satisfied that there would
27 be no undue strains thrown on the pipe.

28 Q All right. Well now, we
29 also understand from some of the evidence that the
30 pipe may, in certain locations which aren't specified,

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 be bound by restraining hoops which project out from
2 the pipe. The hoops, assuming they may tend to help
3 transfer the forces resulting from the cracking
4 ground. Do you have any comment or does that vary
5 your judgment in any way?

6 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, could
7 you refer to some place in the evidence, so that we
8 would have a reference point?

9 MR. SCOTT: No I can't, but
10 there was evidence earlier given that the pipe would
11 in certain circumstances, we weren't told how fre-
12 quently they would be placed, be bound by what were
13 called restraining hoops that would project out from
14 the pipe.

15 MR. MARSHALL: I think you're
16 perhaps referring to evidence that has not yet been
17 given that would be dealt with in the design panel.

18 MR. SCOTT: Well --

19 Q Dr. McRoberts, you're
20 familiar with the restraining hoops, are you?

21 A I think I am, yes.

22 Q All right.

23 A I don't see why a hoop
24 around would change the amount of add freeze
25 transferred on a given surface of the pipe.

26 Q Is it your conclusion
27 then that it won't make any difference to your
28 opinion?

29 A I still think that insofar
30 as I am aware of the geotechnical implications, I don't

Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,³⁶³⁵
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,
Hardy, Williams
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 think ice wedge cracking is a problem.

2 Q Well then the answer is
3 yes?

4 A Yes.

5 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
6 with that short exchange, I want to thank the panel
7 for its patience, and those are all the questions I
8 have.

9 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott will
10 be pleased to hear, sir, that we have no re-examination
11 of this panel.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, it
13 sounds hard to believe, but it looks as if that is
14 the conclusion of your evidence here, so I would
15 like, Dr. Clark to thank you and all of your colleagues
16 for being so patient with all of us, and we appre-
17 ciate -- certainly I do very much -- your coming
18 here, and explaining your work in this project to us.

19 So, thank you very much. If
20 I were you, I would leave before someone else --
21 someone thinks of something else to ask you.

22 DR. CLARK: We will take your
23 advice sir, and thank you for your patience.

24
25 (WITNESSES ASIDE)
26

27 MR. MARSHALL: Sir, perhaps
28 we could have a brief adjournment, before we assemble
29 the next panel. As my learned friend mentioned, they
30 are not all here yet, but we propose to start with

1 the four who are here and the prepared direct
2 testimony.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.
4 We will adjourn for a minute.

5
6 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. MARSHALL: The panel that will begin giving its evidence now, sir, will deal with the design of the pipeline. As I indicated, there are a number of the members of the panel who will be arriving shortly. We do have four members of the panel, Mr. Hoyt Purcell, Mr. Graham George King, Mr. Carl M. Koskimaki, and Mr. Milton E. Holmberg, and I propose to review their qualifications and and introduce them to you, sir.

HOYT PURCELL,
GRAHAM GEORGE KING,
CARL M. KOSKIMAKI,
MILTON E. HOLMBERG, sworn:

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL:

Q Mr. Purcell, I understand you are the project co-ordinator with Northern Engineering Services Company Limited.

A Yes.

Q And what is your educational background, sir?

A I received a Bachelor of Engineering degree and Mechanical Engineering from McGill University in 1956.

Q Your professional affiliations?

A The Association of Professional Engineers, Geologists, and Geophysicists of Alberta; and the American Association of Cost

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 Engineers.

2 Q Would you review briefly,
3 sir, your professional experience, from 1956 up to the
4 present?

5 A In 1956 I worked in the
6 Construction Department of Williams Brothers Company
7 in South America.

8 In 1958 I joined the Domestic
9 Division of Williams Brothers Company working on natural
10 gas pipeline construction projects. I then went into
11 the office and performed cost estimates, construction
12 cost studies, and some miscellaneous engineering design.

13 In 1964 I joined the Engineering
14 Division of Williams Brothers Company.

15 In 1967 I became associated
16 with the Williams Brothers Engineering project of the
17 Great Lakes Gas Transmission Company.

18 Q What were your respon-
19 sibilities in that project, sir?

20 A I was responsible for the
21 preparation of progress reports, capital cost and
22 cash draw-down estimates during construction, and
23 assisting management on special assignments.

24 Q And what have you been
25 engaged in from 1969 to the present?

26 A On the project at hand.

27 Q Sir, what has your
28 overall area of responsibility been?

29 A I have been responsible
30 for the supervision and direction of mechanical and

Purcell, King, Koskimake, Holmberg
In Chief

1 systems design for the pipeline, and the assessment
2 of the feasibility of transporting gas from Arctic
3 regions to markets in the south.

4 Q Thank you, sir. Mr. Graham
5 King, Mr. King, what is your present position with
6 Northern Engineering Services?

7 WITNESS KING: I'm the manager
8 for the system design group.

9 Q Do I understand correctly
10 sir, that your educational background is a Bachelor
11 of Science degree in Mathematics from the University
12 of Sidney, Australia, in 1964, and a Bachelor of
13 Engineering degree in Civil Engineering from the
14 University of Sidney in 1966, majoring in fluid mechanics
15 and soil mechanics, and a Master of Engineering &
16 Science Degree in Civil Engineering from the University
17 of Sidney in 1970, again majoring in fluid mechanics?

18 A That is correct.

19 Q What professional
20 affiliations do you have, sir?

21 A I'm a member of the
22 Association of Professional Engineers, Geologists and
23 Geophysicists of Alberta.

24 Q Turning to your professional
25 experience, sir, is it correct that in 1966 you were
26 research assistant at the University of Sidney?

27 A Yes.

28 Q And following '67 and '68
29 were a post-graduate student at the University of
30 Sidney?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 A That is correct.

2 Q And in 1969?

3 A I worked as an engineer
4 for the Metropolitan Water Board in Sidney, Australia.

5 Q When did you join Williams
6 Brothers Canada, sir?

7 A In 1970.

8 Q And what have your functions
9 been with Williams Brothers Canada Limited in connection
10 with this project?

11 A I've been responsible for
12 the flow calculations and the system design of the
13 proposed Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline.

14 Q And you have the publications
15 that are listed in the resume that has been circulated.
16 Sir, we'll file with the Inquiry copies of the resumes
17 that pertain to each of the members of this panel, but
18 wait until we've introduced all of them and the whole
19 of the group's resumes can be filed as one exhibit.

20 You have three publications
21 listed on the second page of that resume, sir.

22 A That is correct.

23 Q Mr. Carl Koskimaki, what
24 is your present position with Northern Engineering
25 Services, sir?

26 WITNESS KOSKIMAKI: I'm
27 senior engineer and supervisor of the mechanical,
28 electrical and local control design of the compressor
29 stations.

30 Q Sir, you hold a B.Sc.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 degree in Engineering Science from Montana College, of
2 Mineral Science & Technology.

3 A That's correct.

4 Q That you obtained in 1965.

5 A Yes.

6 Q And your professional
7 experience from 1965 to 1971 was with Mountain Fuel
8 Supply Company.

9 A Yes sir.

10 Q What responsibility did
11 you have there, sir?

12 A Gas engineer with duties
13 including system flow studies, compressor station
14 design, cost estimating, construction and special
15 design studies.

16 Q You joined Williams
17 Brothers Canada Limited in 1971, sir?

18 A Yes sir.

19 Q And what has your
20 position been from November, 1972 to the present?

21 A Senior engineer and
22 supervisor for the Northern Engineering Services
23 Company Limited.

24 Q Thank you. The fourth
25 gentleman on the panel, Mr. Commissioner, is Mr. Milton
26 Holmberg, Mr. Holmberg, you are the president of
27 Metallurgical Consultants Incorporated?

28 WITNESS HOLMBERG: Yes, that
29 is correct.

30 Q And you received a B.Sc.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 in Metallurgical Engineering from Pennsylvania State
2 College in 1931.

3 A Yes.

4 Q Could you list, sir, your
5 professional affiliations and honors?

6 A American Society for
7 Metals; American Welding Society; American Society for
8 Testing+Materials; National Association of Corrosion
9 Engineers; American Petroleum Institute; American
10 Society of Mechanical Engineers; Fellow of the Ameri-
11 can Society of Metals.

12 Q Yes sir. Would you review
13 briefly your professional experience from 1932 to '36?
14 I understand that you commenced as a metallurgist
15 and welding engineer with Black, Sybils & Brice of
16 Oklahoma City.

17 A That is correct.

18 Q And what did your work involve
19 there, sir?
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 A My work initially
2 involved laboratory work, chemical analysis, mechanical
3 testing, metallographic examinations, and later I was
4 transferred to the shop, working on special welding
5 problems.

6 Q Now from 1936 to 1951, sir,
7 I understand that you were a metallurgical engineer
8 for Phillips Petroleum Company?

9 A Yes, I went with Phillips
10 in 1936, and helped them set up a metallurgical
11 laboratory.

12 Q What were your responsi-
13 bilities there, sir?

14 A Initially, I was involved
15 with inspection of pressure vessels, pipes, valves
16 and other equipment, and later worked with the construct-
17 ion division on welding problems, and actually operated
18 the metallurgical laboratory in the role of making
19 investigations of failures of equipment.

20 Q Mr. Holmberg, from 1951 to
21 the present, you have been an independent metallurgical
22 consultant?

23 A Yes.

24 Q What work have you been
25 involved in throughout this period, sir?

26 A I have been involved in
27 the study of the performance of metals and their
28 effective use, in order to prevent failures in service,
29 consulting work is included. In the early 1960's,
30 developing specifications for and the inspection of

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
In Chief

ALLWEST REPORTING LTD.
BURNABY 2, B.C.

1 large diameter pipe for several large gas pipeline
2 projects, work on high pressure LPG lines and a
3 helium pipeline for Williams Brothers. I prepared
4 specifications for the pipe laid in a 42 inch diameter
5 oil pipeline in Iran in 1964. Following completion
6 of this project, I was retained by Iranian Oil Ser-
7 vices to set up a test program and make extensive
8 strain gauge studies on pipe to which was -- these
9 studies were representative of repairs and the
10 attachment of field fittings.

11 In 1966, I was requested by
12 Williams Brothers to check the source of steel intended
13 to be used by Stelco for the manufacture of the
14 36 O.D. pipe for the Great Lakes Project.

15 In 1966 I also prepared the
16 specifications for Grade X60 pipe for use by the
17 National Iranian Oil Company to build a 700 mile
18 42 inch O.D. gas pipeline from the southern part of
19 Iran to the Russian border. This project required
20 the necessity to specify steel for use at temperatures
21 down to minus/¹⁰degrees Centigrade.

22 I have been consultant to
23 the Canadian Arctic Gas Project since 1969.

24 Q Sir, you have published
25 those articles that are listed in Appendix A to your
26 resume?

27 A Yes.

28 Q And what has your area of
29 responsibility been as a consultant to the Arctic
30 Gas project?

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
In Chief

1 A I have been a consultant
2 to Northern Engineering Services Limited and the
3 Metallurgical Sub-committee. I helped in the
4 preparation of pipe, valve, fittings and welding and
5 related specifications.

6 Q Thank you, sir.

7 Mr. Commissioner, in response
8 to the preliminary rulings, a list of reports and
9 studies upon which the panel may rely or to which
10 they may refer, has been prepared and circulated, and
11 I propose to file that list of reports as the next
12 exhibit.

13
14 (LIST OF REPORTS FILED EXHIBIT 104)

15
16 MR. MARSHALL:

17 Q Mr. Purcell, I understand
18 that your panel is responsible for the presentation
19 of the evidence to the mechanical design of the
20 application which was prepared under your overall
21 supervision and direction?

22 WITNESS PURCELL:

23 A Yes, we are responsible
24 for the following sections of Section 8, Location,
25 Design and Capacity of Facilities.

26 8(b)(1), system configuration
27 and design.

28 .1 Summary of projected gas volumes
29 by years and expansion for throughput increase;

30 .2 System Configuration.

1 .4.1 Codes, Standards and Regulations;

2 .4.2 Pipeline (except the portion
3 entitled "Buried Line Stability", for which the geo-
4 technical panel is responsible);

5 .4.3 Compressor and Gas Measurement
6 Stations (except the parts on architectural design
7 and pads, and foundations, for which the geotechnical
8 panel is responsible);

9 .4.7 Corrosion Control.

10
11 8.b.2 Formulae and Basic Assumptions.

12 8.b.3 Facilities Design and Capacity - Drawings
13 (except those design drawings
14 related to typical equipment and building foundations
15 and to river crossings for which the geotechnical
16 panel is responsible)

17
18 8.b.4 Flow Diagrams.

19
20 8.b. 5 System Capability Analysis

21
22 8.b.6 Material Specifications

23
24 8.b.7 Communications and Supervisory Control

25 Q Would you briefly describe
26 each of these sections, sir?

27 A Section 8.b.1.1 "Summary
28 of Projected Gas Volumes by Years", lists gas volumes
29 for each segment of the proposed system, on an average
30 day basis by operating year and on an annual basis by

1 calendar year. The supply volumes by year were pro-
2 vided by Canadian Arctic Gas; the Systems Design
3 Group of Northern Engineering Services provided the
4 fuel consumption estimates. This section also con-
5 tains a tabulation of the compression and gas-chilling
6 equipment proposed to transport the projected gas
7 volumes.

8 Section 8.b.1.2 "System Configur-
9 ation", describes the considerations that led to the
10 selection of the pipe sizes, compressor station sizes
11 and spacing and gas chilling and cooling processes
12 that the design is based on.

13 In Section 8.b.1.4.2, the portion
14 entitled "Metallurgy and Stress Analysis" discusses
15 the design temperature criteria that were used in the
16 metallurgical design and lists the basic criteria of
17 system performance that were considered in the stress
18 analyses. The portion entitled "Appurtenances and
19 Facility Crossings" describes briefly the designs
20 of mainline block valves, scraper traps and road
21 and railroad crossings.

22 Section 8.b.1.4.3 "Compressor
23 and Gas Measurement Stations" sets forth the design
24 criteria and describes the design of these facilities.
25 This section includes a discussion of the emissions
26 from the stations and the noise levels to be expected.

27 Section 8.b.1.4.7 "Corrosion
28 Control" summarizes the conclusion of studies into
29 the corrosion aspects of the pipeline system and
30 describes the proposed means to control corrosion

1 on the various portions of the system.

2 Section 8.b.2 "Formulae and
3 Basic Assumptions", lists the equations that were
4 used to calculate gas properties, pressure drop in
5 the pipeline, gas temperatures, and compressor,
6 chilling and cooling station service requirements.
7 It then lists the assumptions upon which the system
8 was designed and its performance determined.

9 Section 8.b.3 "Facilities
10 Design and Capacity Drawings", contains design drawings
11 for the various facilities proposed.

12 Section 8.b.4 "Flow Diagrams"
13 shows salient details of the performance of the system
14 when operating at maximum capacity (that is, with all
15 equipment in service) under average summer and
16 average winter conditions, for each of the first
17 five operating years.

18 Section 8.b.5 "System Capability
19 analysis" sets forth an estimate of the gas volumes
20 that could be delivered from the system in each
21 operating year, when considering the reduction in
22 throughput that will be experienced when equipment
23 is out of service for maintenance or other reasons.
24 This estimate was prepared on the assumption that
25 neither the producers' gas processing plants nor the
26 connecting pipeline systems would impose supply or
27 delivery limitations on the combined facilities of
28 Alaskan Arctic Gas and Canadian Arctic Gas.

29 Section 8b.6. "Material
30 Specifications" contains three specifications for

1 large diameter pipe and one specification each for
2 16 inch and larger valves and 12 inch and larger
3 fittings.

4 Section 8.b.7 "Communications
5 and Supervisory Control " discusses the communicat-
6 ions requirements for constructing and operating
7 the pipeline, and how the requirements are proposed
8 to be implemented.

9 The panel adopts the statements
10 made in the sections of the Application just referred
11 to.
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 Q Sir, I understand that
2 there is an errata pertaining to Section 8(b) and Mr.
3 Commissioner, we have prepared a list of the errata, and
4 I propose to file that as the next exhibit.

5 (ERRATA FILED EXHIBIT 105)

6 MR. MARSHALL: Please delineate
7 your areas of responsibility with respect to the
8 pipeline project.

9 A I was supervisor of the
10 mechanical and systems design group and the preparation
11 of design for this project. Our general instructions
12 from the project sponsors, which were developed in
13 part on the basis of studies we performed, included
14 the points of gas supply and delivery, the gas composi-
15 tion and the design gas volumes for each operating
16 year.

17 In addition to the information
18 and instructions given us by the sponsors, information
19 had to be acquired from other groups within Northern
20 Engineering before the design group could proceed with
21 its task. The pipeline route is the primary example of
22 such information. Other such information included the
23 feasibility of potential sites for compressor stations
24 and other ancillary facilities, soil temperatures and
25 properties, geothermal calculations to allow us to
26 develop and verify the heat transfer calculation
27 techniques used in our flow studies, and logistical and
28 construction limitations on design. Parametric studies
29 were made that were concerned with the comparative ec-
30 nomics of various pipe and compressor station sizes.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 We also had to acquire construction costs for the
2 alternatives being considered before we could compete the
3 studies.

4 I established three major
5 objectives for the design group. The first was to develop
6 technically correct engineering designs for those areas
7 for which I was responsible, which would demonstrate to
8 the sponsors, potential financial backers of the project
9 and regulatory agencies, that the system would perform
10 satisfactorily from an engineering point of view (and
11 which would provide an adequate basis for making cost
12 estimates). The second was that present day technology
13 should be used. We were not to consider in the design
14 future technological advances which might take place.
15 The third objective was that the pipeline system should
16 be an optimum design so that it could be built and
17 operated to transport gas at the minimum unit cost.

18 Q /^{To} What level of detail has the
19 design been carried at this point?

20 A We have carried the design
21 to the level that satisfies the first objective men-
22 tioned above, that of providing a basis for adequate
23 cost estimates and demonstrating satisfactory performance.
24 The other two objectives provided guidelines for
25 reaching this first objective. We selected represen-
26 tative types of major equipment such as turbines, and
27 determined their performance requirements so that
28 estimating prices could be secured from the
29 manufacturers. We prepared material specifications,
30 discussed them in detail with manufacturers of pipe,

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 valves, fittings and pressure vessels, and satisfied
2 ourselves of the availability of these components.

3 We have performed analyses
4 which are unusually rigorous for this stage of design
5 so that we could be confident of making accurate predic-
6 tions of the performance of the pipeline system in view
7 of this scale and environmental considerations. Our
8 stress analyses have gone into considerable detail for
9 the same reasons. We investigated procedures for
10 hydrostatically testing the pipeline so that we can
11 demonstrate the feasibility of the project in this
12 regard.

13 In brief, we have performed the
14 work that is conventionally required to support the
15 engineering aspects of a pipeline application before
16 regulatory bodies, and have also attempted to anticipate
17 any potential problems as a result of the project's scale
18 and environmental setting that could affect the project's
19 feasibility or impact.

20 Q What additional work
21 remains to be done before the project can be constructed?

22 A In our areas of responsi-
23 bility, most of the remaining work is concerned with the
24 specific selection of equipment and materials to be
25 used in the construction of the facilities. This selec-
26 tion involves a process of preparing detailed specifica-
27 tions for each material item, soliciting information
28 from one or more manufacturers of each item, evaluating the
29 responses, and making purchasing recommendations to our
30 client based on relevant factors such as the engineering

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 concerns of availability and suitability for the
2 intended service.

3
4 This process commences with the
5 major items of material, such as the turbine-compressor
6 units, and continues down through progressively smaller
7 items until nuts and bolts are reached. This is
8 because all the services at a compressor station, for
9 example, including lube oil, fuel and starting gas
10 systems, etc., are dependent on the requirements of the
11 major equipment. Another obvious example is that
12 buildings cannot be finally selected until the size of
13 the equipment is precisely determined, and foundation
14 design cannot be completed until the equipment and
15 buildings have been selected.

16 While the equipment is being
17 selected, we will commence the preparation of design
18 drawings so that the various facilities can be con-
19 structed properly. These are scale drawings showing the
20 precise arrangement and dimensions of all the facilities
21 down to the smallest details.

22 Before the pipeline can be
23 hydrostatically tested, it will be necessary to develop
24 a detailed testing plan that literally considers the
25 pipeline route on a foot by foot basis. This plan
26 will include the elevation profile of the route, the
27 location of each water source and disposal point, the
28 direction in which each test section will be filled
29 with water and dewatered, the sequence of testing
30 and the location and final design of the test headers,
the pressure-retaining devices installed temporarily

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 on both ends of each test section.

2 Q Can you tell us why this
3 final design work has not been completed at this time?

4 A First, we do not believe it
5 is necessary to perform designs at this level of
6 detail in order to demonstrate that we have met the
7 objective of demonstrating satisfactory performance
8 and providing a basis for adequate cost estimates.

9 Second, if a final design
10 were complete at this time it would not reflect cond-
11 itions that might be imposed by regulatory bodies, or
12 changes resulting from the completion of gas transpor-
13 tation contracts.

14 Third, the cost of final
15 design would be prohibitive for the project's sponsors
16 at the time, as it would be risk money, spent before
17 any assurances were received that regulatory approvals
18 would be forthcoming.

19 There are other aspects of
20 final design not within this panel's responsibility that
21 must be done. Primary among them is the acquisition
22 of further soil information along the pipeline route
23 so foundations can be designed once the equipment is
24 selected, river crossings can be finally engineered,
25 and the specific designs for maintaining the stability
26 of the pipeline and the adjacent right-of-way can be
27 designed.

28 Q Do any of the objectives
29 of the design group require you to relate the pipeline
30 to its environment?

Purcell, King, Koskinen, Holmberg
In Chief

1 A Pipeline engineers have a
2 particular interest in stability and security and a
3 concern for the physical environment is involved in
4 these factors. In this sense our design objectives
5 include the preservation of the integrity of the
6 physical environment. In general, the steps necessary
7 to provide for the integrity of the pipeline also are
8 required to protect the physical environment.

9 Q What were the respon-
10 sibilities of the design group?

11 A Generally, this group
12 was responsible for the following:

13 1. Systems design. The determination of the locations
14 and performance requirements for the compressor
15 stations; system flow calculations to determine the
16 performance of the system under various operating con-
17 ditions; thermodynamic studies to determine the heat
18 flow around the pipeline and the required duty of the
19 chilling and cooling facilities; and the determination
20 of the necessary gas specifications and the properties
21 and behaviour of the gas.

22 2. Pipeline design. The mechanical design of and
23 material cost estimates for the pipeline including:
24 mainline block valve assemblies, scraper trap assemblies,
25 river crossing manifolds, sales taps and measurement
26 stations; proof testing, which includes the selection
27 of test media and the determination of procedures for
28 hydrostatically proof testing the pipeline; and
29 estimates of material costs.

30 3. Metallurgy. Co-ordination of the considerations

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
In Chief

1 given to the metallurgical aspects of the project,
2 including preparation of specifications, field welding,
3 bending, and mill inspection procedures.

4 4. Stress analysis. Mechanical stress analysis of the
5 pipeline, compressor stations and operating appurtenances.

6 5. Station design. The mechanical, electrical and local
7 control design of and the material cost estimates for
8 the compressor and chilling stations; and the selection
9 of optimum station sizes.

10 6. Corrosion. The development of an effective
11 plan to control corrosion of the pipeline.

12 7. Communications. The design of and material cost
13 estimates for the communications and supervisory control
14 system.

15 The group's responsibility
16 did not include route selection, geotechnical design,
17 civil design (station pads, air strips, foundations,
18 waste disposal), investment cost estimates, logistics
19 or scheduling.

20 MR. MARSHALL; Mr. Commissioner,
21 I believe the remaining four members of the panel
22 have arrived and I'd like to add them now and intro-
23 duce them to you and review their qualifications

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.
25 Certainly, we'll just break informally for a minute
26 or two, if you want to have them seated.

27 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you very
28 much.

29 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FEW MINUTES)

30 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

1 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
2 the four additional members of the panel are Mr.

3 Cameron Reid, Dr. Patrick Price, Mr. John
4 McMullen and Mr. Kenneth Rathje.

5 Beginning with Mr. Cameron Reid,
6 I would like to read his qualifications.

7 Q Mr. Reid, your present
8 position is that of supervisor of Pipeline Mechanical
9 Design of Northern Engineering Services?

10 A That's right.

11 Q And what is your educational
12 background, sir?

13 A I have a Bachelor of
14 Engineering Degree from the Royal Military College.
15 I received my degree in 1967.

16 Q That's Kingston, Ontario?

17 A Yes, sir.

18 Q And what professional
19 affiliations do you hold, sir?

20 A I am a registered Profess-
21 ional Engineer in Alberta and Ontario, and I'm a
22 Member of the Canadian Society of Mechanical Engineer-
23 ing.

24 Q Following your graduation
25 from R.M.C. in 1967, I understand that you remained
26 with the service?

27 A Yes sir, I was in the
28 Royal Canadian Corps of Signals from 1967 to 1970
29 as a Signal Officer.

30 Q And from 19670 to 1971,

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 you were with Dupont of Canada?

2 A Yes, sir.

3 Q What were your responsi-
4 bilities there?

5 A I was a design engineer
6 responsible for cost estimating, design and construct-
7 ion supervision for small projects on the plant.

8 Q From 1971 to the present,
9 you've been with Williams Brothers Canada Limited?

10 A Yes, sir. And it's
11 successor, Northern Engineering.

12 Q What area of responsibility
13 have you had, sir, in connection with this project?

14 A I've been involved with
15 the proof testing, the preliminary design of pipeline
16 appurtenances, and gas measurement facilities and the
17 dense-phase pipeline alternative.

18 Q Thank you.

19 Dr. Price, what is your present
20 position with Northern Engineering Services?

21 WITNESS PRICE:

22 A In charge of the stress
23 analysis there sir.

24 Q I will see if I can help
25 you. You are, as I understand it, senior engineer
26 and supervisor of Mechanical Stress Analysis?

27 A That is right, sir.

28 Q And your educational back-
29 ground is that you have a Bachelor of Science in
30 Civil Engineering and Master of Science in Civil
Engineering from the University of Witwaterstrand

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 in South Africa?

2 A That is correct.

3 Q With degrees obtained in
4 1965 and 1967 respectively?

5 A That's correct.

6 Q You received your Ph.D.
7 from the University of Calgary in 1972?

8 A Correct.

9 Q You received certain awards;
10 in 1965, the Andrew Roberts Post Graduate Scholarship,
11 and the Roberts Construction Company Prize in Civil
12 Engineering and the South African Federation of
13 Civil Engineering Contractors Award, is that correct?

14 A Yes.

15 Q And from 1968 to 1971 you
16 were on a National Research Council of Canada scholar-
17 ship?

18 A That is right.

19 Q Your professional affilia-
20 tions, sir, include the Association of Professional
21 Engineers, Geologists and Geophysicists of Alberta?

22 Is that correct?

23 a That is correct.

24 Q And you're an Associate
25 Member of the American Society of Civil Engineers?

26 A That is correct.

27 Q Your professional experi-
28 ence, beginning in 1966, was firstly as a research
29 and development engineer for Brickor (Pty) Ltd. in
30 South Africa?

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 A That is right.

2 Q 1967 you were a lecturer
3 in structural engineering in Johannesburg?

4 A That is right.

5 Q From 1967 to 1970, you were
6 research assistant at the University of Calgary?

7 A That is right.

8 Q And from 1971 to '72, you
9 were a Post Doctoral Fellow, Numerical Analysis and
10 Systems Analysis?

11 A That is correct.

12 Q Where was that, sir?

13 A The University of Calgary.

14 Q And when did you become
15 involved in the Arctic Gas Project, sir?

16 A In early 1973, 'I think it
17 was.

18 Q Your involvement has
19 been in the field of stress analysis, sir, has it
20 from the outset?

21 A Correction, sir, it was in
22 1972 that I became involved in the Arctic Gas pipeline
23 project.

24 Q Could you speak more closely
25 into the microphone? I have difficulty hearing you.

26 A 1972 sir I became involved
27 in the Arctic Gas Project.

28 Q And your involvement has
29 throughout been in connection with stress analysis?

30 A That is right.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 Q And you have to your credit
2 the publications listed in the second page of your
3 resume?

4 A That is correct, sir.

5 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Dr.
6 Price.

7 Mr. John McMullen.

8 Q Mr. McMullen, I understand
9 you were the senior design engineer with Northern Engin-
10 eering Services?

11 WITNESS MCMULLEN:

12 A Yes, sir.

13 Q What is your educational
14 background, sir?

15 A I hold a Bachelor of
16 Science degree from the University of Alberta in
17 electrical engineering.

18 Q Which you received in what
19 year, sir?

20 A 1962.

21 Q And what professional
22 affiliations do you hold?

23 A I'm a registered professional
24 engineer in the Province of Alberta.

25 Q Following graduation, sir,
26 I understand that you joined Alberta Government Tele-
27 phones, and that you held a number of positions with
28 A.G.T. from 1962 to 1971?

29 A That is correct, sir.

30 Q Could you just review

1 briefly the various positions and the responsibilities
2 that they entail?

3 A In 1962 I began as an engi-
4 neer in training with Alberta Government Telephones.
5 Work included working on contracts and specifications
6 for tendering in the designing of microwave radio
7 systems. In 1964 I became an engineer Class 2 and
8 began my work in transmission requirements for
9 microwave systems.

10 In 1965, I was promoted to
11 Standards Engineer, involved with somewhat the same
12 work.

13 In 1969, I became supervisor
14 engineer of Transmission Standards.

15 Q And in 1971 you joined
16 Datap Systems Limited which I understand is involved
17 with Williams Brothers?

18 A Yes, Datap Systems Limited
19 is a wholly owned subsidiary of Williams Brothers
20 Canada Limited.

21 Q What responsibilities did
22 you hold, firstly with Datap Systems and then with
23 the Northern Engineering Services Company Limited?

24 A I was responsible for
25 feasibility studies involving communications and
26 supervisory controls for the Arctic Gas Pipeline.

27 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, sir.

28 Mr. Kenneth Rathje.
29
30

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Redi, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 Q Mr. Rathje, I understand
2 that your position is that of Corrosion Engineer with
3 Northern Engineering Services Company Limited?

4 WITNESS RATHJE:

5 A Yes, sir.

6 Q Would you outline your
7 educational background, sir?

8 A I received a Bachelor of
9 Science Degree in mechanical engineering at the
10 University of Oklahoma in 1969.

11 Q Have you taken courses that
12 specifically relate to corrosion matters?

13 A Yes, I have taken the
14 National Association of Corrosion Engineers basic
15 corrosion course in Calgary in 1971, and in 1973 I
16 took a cathodic protection technology course in
17 Houston, Texas.

18 Q What professional affiliat-
19 ions do you hold, sir?

20 A I'm a member of the
21 Association of Professional Engineers of Alberta,
22 and I am a Member of the Engineering Institute of
23 Canada, and the National Association of Corrosion
24 Engineers and the American Society of Mechanical
25 Enginers.

26 Q Would you review briefly,
27 your professional experience since graduation, sir?

28 A Yes. I began with Range-
29 land Pipeline, which is a division of Hudson's Bay
30 Oil and Gas. With that firm I was a pipeline engineer.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 I was responsible for various aspects of construction,
2 inspection of construction, and I became involved
3 with their communications system, and I also was involved
4 in economic designs and preliminary designs for
5 additional pump station.

6 In 1971 I joined Williams
7 Brothers Canada Limited. From that point on I was
8 involved with corrosion work.

9 Q What have your duties
10 included with Williams Brothers and then Northern
11 Engineering Services, sir?

12 A I was responsible for
13 coating tests, coating cost estimates, cathodic protect-
14 ion studies and other corrosion related tasks in
15 connection with the Arctic Gas pipeline.

16 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Mr.
17 Rathje.

18 Mr. Commissioner, I would like
19 to file the resumes for the panel as the next exhibit.
20

21 (RESUMES FILED AS EXHIBIT 105)
22

23 J.J. MCMULLEN

24 C.M. REID

25 P. ST. J. PRICE

26 K.E. RATHJE, Sworn:
27

28 DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL:
29

30 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

Miss Hutchinson was to stand at my shoulder and nudge me when she wanted them sworn. The witnesses have stated their qualifications prior to their being administered the oath, and I would like to have them simply confirm that the qualifications that they have stated are correct.

Mr. Rathje?

WITNESS RATHJE: Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Koskimaki?

WITNESS KOSKIMAKI: Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. King?

WITNESS KING: Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Purcell?

WITNESS PURCEL: Yes, sir.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Holmberg?

WITNESS HOLMBERG: Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Reid?

WITNESS REID: Yes, sir.

MR. MARSHALL: Dr. Price?

WITNESS PRICE: Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. McMullen?

WITNESS MCMULLEN: Yes, sir.

MR. MARSHALL: We will continue then sir, Mr. Purcell -- I believe we were on page 10 of the prepared direct evidence.

Q In designing this pipeline, what special design considerations had to be taken into account?

WITNESS PURCELL:

A Firstly, we had to take

1 into account special considerations related to the
2 scale of the project, that is the large diameter, high
3 operating pressure and high gas volumes

4 Secondly, there are special con-
5 siderations related to the arctic environment of
6 much of the pipeline. Some special considerations
7 related to a combination of both the large scale
8 and the Arctic environment.

9 Q Would you please explain
10 how your design has taken into account special design
11 considerations related to the scale of the project?

12 A The scale of the project
13 has required special consideration with respect to
14 the flowing gas temperature behaviour and stress
15 levels in the pipe. Considerable experience has been
16 built up for the design and analysis of the perform-
17 ance of 36 inch and smaller diameter pipelines.

18 These pipelines have typically
19 transported less than one billion cubic feet daily,
20 and have not usually required gas chilling or cooling
21 stations at the discharge of compressor stations
22 to control the temperature within desirable limits.

23 For 36 inch and smaller diameter
24 pipelines, actual operating experience, particularly
25 with regard to flowing temperatures has been of
26 considerable value and design in the prediction of
27 performance, but our work has shown that long, large
28 diameter pipelines transporting more than two
29 billion cubic feet daily, cannot be operated
30 without using gas chillers or coolers.

1 We found that without chillers
2 or coolers, the large blocks of horsepower required
3 at each station to transport the large volumes of
4 gas would increase the temperature differential bet-
5 ween the ground and the gas so that the flowing
6 temperature would tend to increase from station to
7 station and exceed practical limits. The installation
8 of cooling stations on the downstream side of each
9 compressor station therefore has been incorporated
10 in the design.

11 I will discuss the stress level
12 considerations later in the testimony under the
13 heading, "Stress Analysis".
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 Q Please explain what
2 special design considerations are presented by the
3 permafrost environment?

4 A Such
5 considerations related to the need to maintain the
6 permafrost along the right-of-way. The metallurgical
7 and gas composition constraints that result from the
8 necessarily low-flowing temperature, the metallurgical
9 considerations that relate to ^{low}air temperatures in the
10 north, and pipeline stresses. For more than 1,000
11 miles of its route the pipeline passes through areas
12 of permanently frozen ground. Some of the permanently
13 frozen ground contains excess ice which can cause the
14 ground to become unstable and easily erodible if it
15 thaws. In order to stabilize the right-of-way and
16 thereby maintain the integrity of the pipeline, we
17 propose to operate the pipeline at temperatures generally
18 lower than the ground temperature .

19 To maintain the gas flowing
20 temperature below the ground temperature it is necessary
21 to remove the energy imparted to the gas during com-
22 pression, plus the heat flow from the ground to the gas.
23 To do this we have adopted a technique commonly used in
24 the gas-processing industry, a closed cycle mechanical
25 refrigeration system using propane as the refrigerant,
26 which we call a chilling station. Each compressor
27 station in the permafrost region incorporates a chill-
28 ing station immediately downstream of the compressor,
29 so that the temperature of the gas entering the ground
30 downstream of the station can be controlled at the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 appropriate level. These chilling stations are to be
3 powered by gas turbines and will dispose of the energy
4 removed from the gas by cooling the propane refrigerant
5 in air-cooled heat exchangers. The low flowing
6 gas temperatures require special metallurgical consider-
7 ations for the pipe steel. A design temperature of
8 minus ten degrees Fahrenheit was specified for pipe
9 to be installed in the northern portions of the pipeline
10 system. This design temperature provides a margin of
11 safety against the minimum flowing temperature expected
12 in the system, which is approximately zero degrees
13 Fahrenheit under normal operating conditions. The
14 gas temperature will be maintained above minus ten
15 degrees Fahrenheit under any operating condition, by
16 minimum suction temperature, over-ride controls that will
17 cut back on the compression horsepower if the gas tem-
18 perature approaches minus ten degrees F.

19 The low gas temperatures have
20 also been considered in determining the composition of
21 the gas. The presence of heavy hydrocarbon components
22 in the gas can cause formation of hydrocarbon liquids at
23 low temperatures and pressures, and the existence of
24 hydrocarbon liquids in the gas stream can cause diffi-
25 culties in operating the gas compression equipment.
26 Laboratory tests were therefore conducted to confirm
27 that the gas compositions proposed by the Prudhoe Bay
28 and Mackenzie Delta gas producers would not result in
29 the formation of hydrocarbon liquids in the gas pipeline.

30 Q If I can interrupt there,

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

perhaps Mr. King could explain what gas hydrates are.

WITNESS KING: A gas hydrate is a mixture of gas and ice crystals. Looks very much like snow.

Q Carry on, Mr. Purcell.

WITNESS PURCELL: Likewise the formation of gas hydrates is more likely at low temperatures and hydrates may block the pipeline or restrict the amount of gas that the pipeline can carry. Accordingly, laboratory tests are being conducted to determine the critical water content specification for the pipeline gas such that hydrates will not be a problem.

The unusually low ambient temperatures were also considered in the metallurgical design. For those components of the pipeline system that can be expected to reach or be exposed to ambient temperatures, we specified a design temperature at least as low as those ambient temperatures.

In the mechanical stress analysis we had to take into account the possible pipe movements due to causes such as frost heave and settlement, so that over-straining and buckling of the pipe would not occur.

Q Would you please explain the design considerations arising from the combination of the scale of the project and its Arctic environment?

A Both the scale of the project and its Arctic environment give rise to design considerations in the areas of the technology of pipe, valves and fittings, pressure testing the pipeline,

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 coating materials and field welding.

2 We have solicited test data
3 from manufacturers of pipe, valves and fittings and
4 have determined from such data that the capacity and
5 technology are available to meet our design specific-
6 ations.

7 Special consideration was given
8 to the procedures for hydrostatically testing the pipeline
9 in the permafrost regions. Two test methods are proposed:
10 Warm water, which is commonly used in Southern Canada
11 to test pipelines constructed during the winter; and
12 a methanol-water solution whose freezing point is low
13 enough to avoid the formation of ice in the pipe during
14 the test. In this investigation, we performed studies
15 to determine the thermal regime inside and outside the
16 pipe during the various hydrostatic testing
17 operations with these two media. Other groups investi-
18 gated the environmental and geotechnical effects of
19 testing and we are confident that the pipeline can be
20 safely tested.

21 In order to determine the
22 suitability of pipeline external coating materials for
23 use in permafrost, we performed laboratory tests designed
24 to simulate the service conditions that would be
25 encountered. On the basis of the results of these tests
26 and our experience with various coating systems we have
27 determined that depending upon the installation season
28 and the operating temperatures, several coating
29 systems are suitable for the various portions of the
30 pipeline system. We also determined through tests

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 that our Arctic test facilities that it is feasible to
3 provide cathodic protection for pipeline buried in
4 permafrost.

5 In view of the low ambient
6 temperatures under which the welding along much of the
7 route will be performed and the heavy sections to be
8 welded, our material specifications are designed to
9 ensure weldable components and we have in hand the pre-
10 paration of field welding procedure specifications.

11 Q So we clearly understand
12 what is included in your responsibility, sir, what is
13 meant by "mechanical design"?

14 A In this context, it means
15 the arrangement of equipment (valves, for example),
16 and the associated piping and fittings to produce a
17 facility that will perform a desired function.
18 Examples of such facilities for the pipeline are
19 scraper traps, valve settings, and gas measurement
20 stations. It excludes the detailed metallurgical con-
21 siderations and the design of the foundations and
22 buildings.

23 Q Are there any features
24 of these facilities that are unusual or unique?

25 A Except for their
26 size, these facilities are conventional. Their
27 design follows well proven precedents in the gas
28 transmission industry. Data we have secured from
29 manufacturers demonstrate that components of this
30 size are available.

Purcell, King, Koskim aki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 Q How will the pipeline be
3 tested ?

4 A The pipeline will be
5 hydrostatically tested after construction to prove its
6 strength and integrity. The length of pipe tested will
7 vary with each test, but in most cases will be between
8 3 and 10 miles.

9 A hydrostatic test consists of
10 welding pressure retaining test heads on each end of the
11 test section, filling the test section with water,
12 and pumping water into the test section to increase the
13 internal pressure to at least 125% of the planned opera-
14 ting pressure. The test pressure is maintained for a
15 period of time sufficient to ensure that there are no
16 small leaks or defects, and then the pressure is
17 relieved and the water removed.

18 In addition, it is proposed
19 to run electronic pigs through the pipeline designed
20 to detect any injurious defects not previously detected
21 and in particular those that may have occurred during
22 construction.

23 Q How do you solve the
24 problem of potential freezing of the water inside
25 the pipe?

26 A That problem is not
27 unique to this pipeline, but in permafrost the ground
28 temperatures at pipeline depth during hydrostatic
29 testing will require that either an anti-freeze such
30 as methanol be added to the water, or a technique known

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 as warm water testing be used. Warm Water testing inv-
3 olves heating the water to about 50 degrees Fahrenheit
4 before pumping it into the pipe. The wamwater heats
5 the backfill and eliminates the risk of freezing for
6 a limited time. Both methods will be used on this
7 pipeline with water anti-freeze testing being the
8 predominant method used north of the 60th Parallel.

9 Q Would you outline the
10 details of a water anti-freeze testing plan?

11 A Methanol is considered
12 as the most likely anti-freeze choice. The methanol
13 would be barged to a storage site near the pipeline
14 right-of-way during the summer prior to construction
15 and would be stored in bladder-type storage tanks within
16 a diked storage area. At the start of testing it
17 would be moved to the test-site, mixed with water, and
18 pumped into the pipe. The mixture would remain in the
19 pipe and would be used in testing subsequent sections
20 until testing was completed and the solution was ready
21 for disposal.

22 Q How will this testing
23 fluid be disposed of?

24 A Two methods of disposal
25 are possible. The first consists of diluting the
26 test medium and disposing of the solution. The alternative
27 method is to distill the solution and recover the
28 methanol. This process would yield a solution of about
29 1% methanol by weight, which could then be disposed of.
30 The methanol-rich distillate, of about 70% methanol

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 by weight would be suitable for disposal by burning,
2 or it could be recovered for secondary use. The dis-
3 tillation process would result in the release of less
4 than 2% of the total quantity of methanol.

5 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
6 Mr. Reid has prepared some slides which help to
7 better illustrate the proof-testing the pipeline.
8 I would ask him now to present those.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 WITNESS REID:

2 A As mentioned previously,
3 the hydrostatic testing of a pipe is conducted after
4 the pipe has been constructed and backfilled, but
5 consists of tapping or sealing the ends of the test
6 section with a test head, filling the test section
7 with the liquid test medium, pressurizing the
8 test section by means of injecting additional test
9 medium with a high pressure pump, scaling the
10 section and monitoring the pressure for a specified
11 period of time to ensure that there are no leaks, and
12 finally releasing the pressure and removing the test
13 medium from the test section.

14 Should a leak be discovered at any
15 time during the hydrostatic test, the pressure is
16 relieved, the leak repaired and a complete retest is
17 conducted.

18 The conventional method of testing
19 winter construction in non-permafrost areas is a
20 technique known as warm water testing. This schematic
21 represents how the water is obtained and heated. We
22 have here a water source, a fill pump. A portion of
23 the water is removed, passed through a heater and remixed
24 with the main stream, yielding a water with a temper-
25 ature of about 50 degrees Fahrenheit. This then goes
26 to the test section and is introduced into the test
27 section.

28 This schematic represents a
29 warm water test section. Water from the heater enters
30 the test section and passes through the test section

1 until the test section has filled. Then for an addi-
2 tional period of time, sometimes referred to as the
3 circulation time, warm water is continued to be pumped
4 through the test sections, thus warming the backfill
5 until the temperature of the water being discharged
6 reaches the specified temperature somewhat above 32
7 degrees Fahrenheit. This can be as high as 40 or 45
8 degrees Fahrenheit.

9 The amount of water required to
10 warm the backfill sufficiently to conduct a hydrostatic
11 test without any freezing is dependent upon the length
12 of the test section, the temperature, the type of back-
13 fill, the fill rate and water temperature.

14 There are a number of dis-
15 advantages to the warm water test method which include
16 highwater usage, and the creation of a thaw bulb
17 around the pipe.

18 As an example, for a five mile
19 test section in the Norman Wells region, the quantity
20 of water required to test the section would be about
21 two and a quarter times the fill volume of the test
22 section. The thaw bulb created around the fill end
23 of the test section would be about three inches from
24 the pipe wall, the thaw front.

25 Because of the disadvantages of
26 the warm water test method, a test method known as
27 water methanol testing is proposed for use on this
28 pipeline. Again, a water source is required and
29 methanol is required. The two are mixed and then
30 introduced into the test section. A quantity of water

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 methanol mixture in excess of that required to fill a
2 test section is mixed and the additional fluid passes
3 into the subsequent test section.

4 After all the methanol has been
5 used in making the mix, the test section is then ready
6 to be sealed off and a hydrostatic test conducted.

7 After the first hydrostatic test
8 has been conducted, the test fluid is then pushed
9 from the tested section by means of compressed air
10 into the subsequent test section, again with excess
11 test medium going on into the following test section.

12 It should be noted that no addi-
13 tional water source is required. I believe the pre-
14 vious slide explained the length of these test sections
15 as being approximately three miles.

16 The same test medium is used to
17 conduct all the test sections in a spread. The end
18 of the testing season the test fluid must be disposed
19 of. This schematic represents the process by

20 which distillation would occur and the methanol
21 can be separated from the test solution.

22 The source of test fluid comes
23 from the last test section. It passes through a
24 heat recovery exchanger and into boilers and into
25 a distillation column. The distillation column would
26 yield two streams. Bottoms which would be a one
27 percent waste water -- one percent methanol waste
28 water solution, which is suitable for dispersal onto
29 land and ice over water.

30 The distillates would be a methanol

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 rich solution of about 70 percent methanol. This
2 would go to tankage and be suitable for disposal by
3 burning.

4 This next slide shows how ^{tested} ~~that~~
5 sections are joined in a manner which ensures ^{the entire}
6 pipeline is of the same -- has been subjected to the
7 same rigorous testing. After two adjacent test sections
8 have been successfully tested, the test heads are
9 removed and the sections are used -- are joined, using
10 a pretested section of pipe.

11 This pretested pipe has been sub-
12 jected to a hydrostatic test similar to that given
13 the test section. The welds used in making the con-
14 nections are inspected by x-ray to ensure their
15 soundness.

16 Previously in my presentation, I
17 mentioned the removal of water from the test section
18 and the introduction of water. This is done using a
19 tool commonly referred to as a pig. This schematic
20 shows a pig which is specifically designed for the
21 removal of water from that test section. The
22 pig is propelled by high pressure gas or air behind
23 it. And the four cups act as squeegees, pushing the
24 water ahead of it.

25 Should any water bypass any one
26 of these squeegees, this particular pig, has a feature
27 which allows the water which passes a cup to get ahead
28 of the cup through this passage, the high pressure
29 gas providing the mode of force to move the water back
30 ahead of the pig.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 I now have three slides which I
2 think will also be of interest. I may not have -- the
3 last schematic I showed you represented a pig which
4 was designed for the removal of water from the test
5 sections. This slide shows three pigs, these are 56
6 inch pigs, which were manufactured for a gas pipeline
7 in Russia. These could be used for either filling or
8 dewatering a test section to separate the test
9 fluid from the air in the line, or the air being used
10 to dewater the line.

11 MR. MARSHALL: Where were these
12 pigs made?

13 A These were manufactured
14 in the United Kingdom.

15 In my presentation I made refer-
16 ence to test heads which are welded to the end of test
17 sections to maintain the pressure and allow the intro-
18 duction or removal of water and the introduction or
19 removal of pigs or pigging devices.

20 This particular slide shows a 48
21 inch test head which was used on Interprovincial
22 Pipeline's 48 inch oil line. The valves on the top
23 of the test head are used for introducing or removing
24 water and the arrangement on the end, is actually
25 closure which can be opened to introduce or remove
26 a pigging device.

27 In his testimony, Mr. Purcell
28 made reference to an electronic internal inspection
29 tool, or an electronic pig which would be used prior
30 to testing, to detect primarily any faults that may

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 occur during the construction of the pipeline.

2 This is a picture of a 36 inch
3 tool, as Mr. Purcell described, developed by Trans-
4 Canada Pipelines. This device is run prior to testing
5 and can detect construction defects. This would be
6 used to ensure that the possibility of a failure
7 during hydrostatic tests is reduced to a minimum.

8 Q Mr. Reid, is this what
9 they call a smart pig?

10 A Yes, this is often referred
11 to as a smart pig.

12 Q I had to get that in the
13 record.

14 A That's all I have.

15 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Mr.
16 Reid.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you, Mr.
18 Reid.

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

Q Now, to the subject of metallurgy, sir. What aspects of the pipe are of particular interest from the metallurgical viewpoint?

WITNESS PURCELL:— The Metallurgical Sub-Committee developed the specifications for pipe and welding. The specifications for pipe and welding comply with the applicable codes and regulations and contain additional requirements for this pipeline that have been developed in the course of our metallurgical studies. In developing the specifications, the primary metallurgical concerns were:

1. Mechanical properties, particularly low temperature notch toughness.

(i) Transition temperature below the design temperature for all mainline pipe to avoid brittle fractures.

(ii) High notch toughness at the design temperature to avoid fracture initiation.

(iii) The use of mechanical reinforcing bands on mainline pipe to positively assure the arrest of propagating shear fractures.

2. Weldability.

(i) Seam weld quality, particularly high notch toughness of weld metal and heat-affected zone at low design temperatures.

(ii) Girth weld quality, in addition to high notch toughness of the weld in heat-affected zone at low design temperatures, the pipe's composition and carbon equivalent, the filler metal and the elimination of defects that might initiate failures.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMillen, Reid, Prime, Rathje
In Chief

Q Sir, which are the ~~seam~~
welds?

A The seam welds are the
welds that are put in in the process of manufacturing
the pipe.

Q And the girth welds?

A The girth welds are
made in the field to join the sections of pipe together.

Q Could you now discuss
brittle fracture?

A There are two aspects of
brittle fracture that are of concern. One concern is
whether the pipe material is susceptible to brittle
fracture propagation. The second concern is that pipe
material also changes from ductile to brittle behaviour
in the initiation of a fracture. Brittle fractures pro-
pagate at speeds faster than the rate at which the
pipe depressurizes and therefore the fracture might
continue for long distances. When the material is susce-
ptible to brittle fracture initiation, small flaws can
initiate failures.

The change from ductile to
brittle fracture is a function of temperature. The
mainline pipe material will be designed not to be
susceptible to brittle fracture propagation. For a
given material, the change from ductile to brittle
fracture initiation occurs at a temperature that is
significantly below the change for fracture propagation.
Therefore, the mainline pipe material will not be

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 subject to brittle fracture initiation either. For
3 the heavy wall pipe, the fracture initiation transition
4 temperature will be below the lowest expected operating
5 temperature to ensure that brittle fracture initiation
6 cannot occur.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
8 Dr. Purcell. By "the heavy wall pipe" do you mean the
9 mainline pipe, don't you?

10 A No sir. By that I mean
11 the heavier yet wall pipe that would be used at comp-
12 ressor stations or at river crossings.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: I see.

14 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
15 Mr. Holmberg has prepared some slides and graphs that
16 will help take us through this rather difficult subject
17 area, and I would ask him now to make his presentation.

18 WITNESS HOLMBERG: The purpose
19 of this presentation is to explain how metals behave,
20 why and how they break, and discuss some of the tests
21 and names used to prevent failure.

22 Metals break in three ways,
23 either in a brittle manner, a ductile manner, or
24 a combination of the two. To help understand what
25 is meant by brittle, I'll show the first slide. These
26 are two tensile test specimens, a standard type of
27 test that is made. The sample at the right is broken
28 with very little evidence of ductility, any evidence
29 of stretching, deformation. It's almost a square break.
30 That is a brittle break, it shows very little evidence

Parcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 of deformation. The sample at the right, however,
3 has stretched, reduced in section, and has failed after
4 considerable plastic deformation. That is referred to
5 as a ductile type fracture.

6 Q That's the fracture on
7 the left, is it, sir?

8 A On the left, yes.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Brittle
10 on the left; ductile on the left.

11 A Yes.

12 Q We're with you.

13 A Now in order to better
14 understand why metal breaks in these two different
15 manners, a little knowledge of metallurgy will be of
16 some help. Metals are crystalline materials. They are
17 made up of a mixture of crystals, and in the individual
18 crystals or grains, the atoms are arranged in an
19 orderly way. In steel, the atoms are arranged so that
20 they form tubes, and the next slide --

21 Q They form what?

22 A Tubes. T-U-B-E-S.

23 Sorry. Perhaps this slide will better illustrate it.
24 This is a simplified drawing showing the arrangements
25 of atoms on one plain. If this were in three dimensions
26 this would be a cube. In the single plain the atoms
27 are arranged in this square shaped arrangement and
28 I'd like to call attention to two types of plains
29 that exist, a cleavage plain in which it is perpendicular
30 to the lines of force between the atoms, and then sheer

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 plains that are diagonal. These two different plains
3 play an important part as to how metals fail. Now if
4 this crystal were loaded, in tension, the two ends are
5 shown here, in the cleavage plain direction the metals
6 -- the atoms are pulled apart a slight amount; whereas
7 in the cleavage plain direction they slip along these
8 plains and become distorted. Now if you would remove
9 the tensile load, both of these would return to this
10 position here, and this is what we had when we were
11 using metals in the elastic limit. When you load them
12 up and unload them they return to their original
13 position without getting deformation.

14 The next slide shows what
15 happens, illustrates what happens when you continue
16 loading. Now the sheer plains are weaker than the
17 bonds between the atoms, with the result that normally
18 when you load a piece of steel it tends to start
19 failing in sheer, or deforming in sheer, I should
20 say, in which case the slippage that was shown on the
21 previous slide continues further so that a whole block,
22 this block of atoms here, actually move up and then
23 re-align themselves with the atoms across the sheer
24 plan. You unload this sample here after it's been
25 strained to this point, it will not return to its
26 original position but will remain as shown here. This
27 is, results in the plastic deformation that was shown
28 in that tensile specimen.

29 On the other hand, if the
30 material cannot move along these plains, you reach a

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 point that you can break the bonds between the atoms
3 and you'll get a cleavage break and this will result
4 in the brittle type failure that was shown in the one
5 tensile test specimen. Now the way the strength of
6 steel is increased is by principally by putting block-
7 ~~as~~ in the shear plains so that movement will not take
8 place. As a result, the sheer strength increases and
9 you increase the tendency to get this cleavage, brittle
10 type of failure.

11 Now this, it is possible to
12 retain the same degree of ductility and toughness in
13 steels, even though you increase their strength, up to
14 limits of about 150,000 pounds per square inch. This
15 is well below the strength / ^{levels} which we're using steels
16 in this pipeline. Now if you lower the temperature
17 of steel as well as other metals, you reduce the
18 tendency for a sheer type of failure to take place and
19 the material will deform in a ductile manner, and
20 increase the likelihood of this to occur, By making
21 tests over a series -- over a wide range of temperatures
22 this tendency can be shown and there are a large number
23 of different types of tests that can be used to determine
24 this transition from a ductile behaviour to a brittle
25 behaviour. I should point out that the abscissa
26 here shows an increase in temperature and vertical
27 component shows an increase in ductility.
28
29
30

1 Now, it should be noted that this
2 change from ductile to brittle behaviour does not take
3 place at a specific temperature. It takes place over
4 a range of temperatures, and the shape and steepness
5 of this curve varies, depending upon the type of test
6 used, the speed of testing, the size of the specimens
7 used and several other variables.

8 The next slide illustrates one
9 way of plotting such a curve. This is a series of
10 tests made at temperatures zero, twenty, thirty, forty
11 and sixty degrees. At sixty degrees, this specimen
12 broke with a ductile fracture, this small area here,
13 a small brittle zone at the initiation of failure in
14 this particular test.

15 At forty degrees, there is a slight
16 increase in this brittle zone. At thirty degrees, a
17 still greater increase and 20, further, and at zero
18 degrees, it is essentially a hundred percent brittle.
19 I hope I went through this right, the increase in
20 brittle zone.

21 This particular series of test
22 the transition zone would be between about 40 degrees
23 and zero degrees. This is a test that's been developed
24 and been used widely in the -- to check the transition
25 temperatures, ^{or} the transition zone of pipeline
26 steels and a useful transition temperature
27 which is really a defined temperature within the trans-
28 ition zone is the temperature at which you have 85
29 percent, or 80 percent shear fracture. This would be
30 referred to as an 80 percent shear fracture transition

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
in chief

1 temperature.

2 It's been found that this trans-
3 ition temperature corresponds with the behaviour of
4 line pipe at different temperatures. There have been
5 other transition temperatures defined, for example,
6 the fractures of ships during the war; it was
7 found that the behaviour of the Charpy v-notch impact test
8 corresponded with the behaviour of the type of
9 steels/^{that}were used in ships, and they developed what
10 they call the 15 foot pound energy transition temper-
11 ature.

12 One of the important things to
13 keep in mind as far as these transition temperatures,
14 and the difference between a ductile and brittle
15 fracture is that a brittle fracture occurs very
16 quickly, where as this deformation that was shown in
17 one of the earlier slides requires time and takes
18 place more slowly. This is quite important, and the
19 work done by the Battelle Memorial Institute for
20 the American Gas Association showed that brittle fract-
21 ures occurred at very high speeds; ductile fractures
22 on the other hand occurred at low speed, this being
23 speed plotted in this ordinate.

24
25 And as would be imagined between
26 the two extremes, why there is an intermediate zone.
27 The difference in the speeds, between the different
28 types of fractures as illustrated in this slide here.
29 Now the brittle fractures occur from about 1,500 feet
30 per second up to about 3,000 feet per second.

1 Now this is faster than the
2 acoustic velocity of the gas which ranges from about
3 1250 to 1450 feet per second. And the significance
4 of this is that in a brittle fracture it propagates so
5 fast that the advancing crack is always or continues
6 to be exposed to the pressure that existed at the time
7 the failure originated. In other words, there is no
8 loss of energy as far as the crack, rapidly propagating
9 crack is concerned.

10 Now, on the other hand, shear
11 failures propagate at a much lower rate, down in the
12 order of about 400 to 700 feet per second, well below
13 this speed of gas, and the highest speed that's been
14 recorded to date is something like 1,100 psi, or a
15 hundred feet per second.

16 Now, the significance of this is,
17 that in a ductile fracture the advancing crack is
18 exposed to decreasing pressures, so the likelihood
19 of it propagating for long distances and -- is much
20 less than in a brittle fracture.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: With a brittle
22 fracture you don't get depressurization because of
23 the speed of the fracture?

24 A That's right, that's
25 right. With a ductile fracture you do get the
26 pressurization.

27 Just a few words about some of
28 the tests that are used. The most commonly used test
29 is to check the behaviour of steel is what they call
30 the Charpy v-notch test. This is a small specimen,

1 0.394 inches square with a 45 degree notch in one side.
2 It is placed in a suitable holder and then a pendulum
3 swings down and hits the specimen and breaks it.

4 Now, the energy that is absorbed
5 in breaking the specimen is the most common measure
6 of the -- used in evaluating this specimen. This is
7 in --the energy is in foot pounds which is equivalent
8 to the length of the arm of the pendulum times the
9 weight of the pendulum, and for example if you had a
10 40 foot pounds, it would be 40 foot pounds to break
11 this small section.

12 Now, this is the same as if you
13 had a one pound weight and raised it up 40 feet and
14 dropped it down and broke the specimen.

15 Now, we are interested in the
16 transverse properties of line pipe because of the
17 hoop stresses and the tendency for the, if the
18 failure occurs, the fracture propagating in a longi-
19 tudinal direction. As a result, the test specimen is
20 orientated in that direction.

21 Now, there are several other ways of evaluating
22 this test, one is the shear area that was previously
23 referred to; another is measuring the amount of deform-
24 ation that occurs.

25 One of the disadvantages of the
26 Charpy V-notch test is its small size. Battelle, in
27 its work on studying brittle fracture, found that it
28 was desirable to test specimens with the full
29 fitness of the pipe, so this thickness here represents
30 the thickness of the pipe. It's a larger specimen,

1 three inches, and again has a notch which is pressed
2 in with the idea of initiating a brittle fracture.
3 The specimen is broken by a heavy weight dropping and
4 hitting the specimen with enough force to cause it
5 to snap in two.

6 Now one of the other advantages
7 of this specimen is that it's wide enough that you not
8 only initiate a fracture here, but the tests propagate
9 across about three inches, something less than three
10 inches. This is desirable in correlating the tests
11 with the fracture speed and behaviour of line pipe.

12 The next slide compares the
13 -- these two sizes of the samples and the advantages
14 of the larger specimen. I think it is somewhat
15 obvious.

16 The comments so far have been
17 made with respect to fractures initiated at high
18 speeds. Now, there are many failures that occur at
19 just a static space or constant pressure. There is
20 no impact or high loading rate. These types of tests
21 require different types of specimens, and one of the
22 more useful is a test that's been developed in rather
23 recent years and used extensively over in England.
24 I've been principally responsible for developing this
25 specimen.

26 The specimen is considerably
27 larger and it has a very sharp crack, or notch at
28 the bottom, and before testing the specimen, an
29 actual crack is developed at the root of this
30 notch. This is done by flexing the specimen at high

1 speeds and specific loads until you develop what they
2 call a fatigue crack. Now this gives an extremely
3 sharp notch and is the type of thing that we are
4 interested in as far as the behaviour of defects in
5 pipe are concerned.
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 After the notch is developed
3 the specimen is supported in two supports, and then a
4 known load applied, and the amount of opening of this
5 crack is measured by the special gauges. By means of
6 this test it is possible to determine the point, the
7 loads at which cracks are initiated. It's also possible
8 to make this type of test over a range of temperatures
9 and develop a temperature transition approach.

10 Now the reason that notches are
11 so important is that many steels will behave in a
12 ductile manner, while you have uniform sections. But
13 in the presence of a notch they will behave in a brittle
14 manner, and this is important because of the crack is the
15 most serious defect you can have in a piece of
16 steel, and it's important to work up these correlations
17 between the behaviour of notched steel and actual behaviour
18 in service.

19 Now in specifying the materials
20 for the pipeline we have under consideration, we have
21 taken into consideration all these factors and worked
22 with the suppliers of equipment to make sure that
23 steels will be available suitable for the temperature
24 ranges and conditions that we'll encounter, and have
25 conducted numerous tests to check performance of the
26 materials under conditions that we will be encounter-
27 ing. As a result, we believe we're prepared to specify
28 materials that will result in a safe pipeline that will
29 be compatible with its environment.
30

Q Thank you, Mr. Holmberg.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
M cMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 Mr. Commissioner, Mr. Holmberg
3 has brought a couple of specimens which he could show
4 to you to illustrate these two types of fractures.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Holmberg
6 showed me those specimens, the rest of you couldn't
7 hear what he was saying, but the specimens are so
8 small you really have to stand up close to examine them,
9 and when we adjourn at six Mr. Holmberg perhaps wouldn't
10 mind showing the counsel and any others those same
11 specimens and explaining the test.

12 Carry on, Mr. Marshall.

13 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, sir.

14 Q Mr. Purcell, to continue
15 then with your direct testimony.

16 WITNESS PURCELL: The effect
17 of low temperatures causing brittle fractures in steel
18 is quite well understood as a result of extensive
19 work done by our industry throughout the world during
20 the past 30 years or more. Research work sponsored
21 by the American Gas Association at Battelle Memorial
22 Institute since 1953 has resulted in the development
23 of the Drop Weight Tear Test whereby it can be
24 determined whether or not line pipe is susceptible to
25 brittle fracture propagation. However, the Battelle
26 work on line pipe was limited mostly to thicknesses in
27 the order of one-half inch and temperatures down to 32
28 degrees Fahrenheit. The Arctic Gas Pipeline
29 involves the use of thicker steels and exposure to
30 lower temperatures. It was not known to what extent the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 the drop weight tear test procedure for determining the
3 transition temperature between ductile and brittle
4 fracture propagation was applicable to these more severe
5 conditions. A test program was set up by which the
6 validity of the drop weight tear test for the project's
7 steel could be evaluated.

8 The results of the test program
9 showed that the drop weight tear test is a conservative
10 predicator of the full-scale brittle to ductile propa-
11 gation transition behaviour of the 0.72-inch wall thick-
12 ness mainline pipe. For the 1.25-inch heavy wall pipe,
13 however, the avoidance of brittle fracture initiation is
14 the main consideration. This pipe is used in short
15 lengths primarily at compressor stations, and therefore
16 could not be subject to a long failure even in the brittle
17 fracture propagation mode. The test program confirmed that
18 the methods developed to calculate critical crack sizes
19 for both the mainline pipe and the heavy wall pipe are
20 accurate. The high notch toughness of all pipe results
21 in a critical crack size so large that the cracks can
22 be readily detected during fabrication and in service.

23 Q Please describe how you
24 plan to avoid fracture initiation.

25 A Fractures always initiate
26 at defects, where the stresses are magnified due to the
27 geometry of the defect. The size and type of defects
28 that can exist without initiating a fracture are related
29 to the pipe size and the strength and toughness of the
30 steel and the stress. As the pipe diameter, wall thick-
ness and toughness of the pipe increase, the size of

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 a tolerable defect also increases. For the pipe in our
3 system, a through-wall defect sufficiently long to
4 initiate a failure is much larger than the defects that
5 our inspection procedures are able to detect.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me.

7 Let me just read that again. Yes, I understand.

8 A The standard solution to
9 the problem is to detect and eliminate these defects
10 during the pipe manufacturing process, and to employ
11 good transportation practices, construction inspection
12 procedures, and a stringent in-place hydrostatic test,
13 so that defects large enough to initiate fractures will
14 not exist when the pipeline is placed in operation. We
15 believe that our stringent inspection procedures, com-
16 bined with the large size of a critical defect, and
17 the use of electronic pigs practically eliminate the
18 risk of a critical defect existing in the Arctic Gas
19 Pipeline when it is placed into operation. It is
20 also necessary to protect against such^a defect being in-
21 troduced into the pipeline after it goes into operation.
22 The two primary causes of post-construction defects are
23 damage by external forces and corrosion. Surveillance
24 of the pipeline is necessary to prevent the first.
25 Our experience should be better than industry's average
26 over much of the route because of the limited humid
27 activity and the presence of frozen ground in the north.
28 We believe that damage from corrosion will also be
29 minimal because of careful protection, and the low
30 temperatures over much of the route. Again, the long

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 defect necessary to initiate a fracture in this pipeline
3 is a great advantage.

4 Q Please describe how you
5 plan to limit the length of any propagating fractures
6 which might occur in mainline pipe.

7 A The propagation of brittle
8 fractures in mainline pipe is prevented by the use of
9 pipe made from steel with the ductile/brittle propaga-
10 tion transition temperature below the operating
11 temperature so that in the unlikely event a fracture
12 develops it will be a ductile type fracture. Ductile
13 shear fractures propagate at slower speeds than brittle
14 fractures and are therefore less likely to be as long.
15 Experience has been that when a propagating brittle frac-
16 ture changes to a ductile type, the fracture terminates
17 within a short distance. However, in recent years a
18 few ductile type fractures up to about 1000 feet in
19 length have been experienced.

20 This precipitated a large
21 amount of work at Battelle. The results of this work
22 enabled Battelle to develop a hypothesis by which they
23 could determine the notch toughness requirements of the
24 steel necessary to prevent unstable (long running)
25 ductile shear type fractures. Battelle's work explains
26 how fractures speed, material properties, and design
27 parameters determine fracture arrest capabilities in
28 a given length of pipe.

29 MR. MARSHALL: Let me just
30 stop you there for a moment. There has been mention

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 made a number of times of Battelle. Could you or perhaps
3 Mr. Holmberg explain who or what Battelle is?

4 A I think Mr. Holmberg has
5 been working with them for longer than I have.

6 WITNESS HOLMBERG: Battelle
7 is an organization in Columbus, Ohio, that was founded
8 by a man obviously by the name of Battelle, to enable
9 organizations to have research work done in metallurgy.
10 They were founded back about 1930, and any organization
11 or any individual or company has an opportunity to use
12 their services, at a price. They have built up a
13 very competent and extensive organization to do research
14 work on all phases of metallurgy, as well as many other
15 fields now. They have been very useful, particularly
16 during the war and some of the other developments where
17 special materials were required. They did a large
18 amount of work on the brittle fracture of steels in
19 ships and other problems.

20 Q Thank you, sir.

21 WITNESS PURCELL: After
22 reviewing and evaluating the development of the Battelle
23 hypothesis, we used it as the basis for our original
24 investigations of the notch toughness requirements for
25 the mainline pipe to control ductile fracture propaga-
26 tion. The fracture control criteria developed by
27 Battelle had been shown to be accurate for pipe in the
28 sizes and strengths being used in the natural gas pipe-
29 line industry. It was considered important nevertheless
30 to conduct full-scale burst tests to check and confirm

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 whether the fracture control criteria based on the
3 Battelle hypothesis would be accurate for pipe specified
4 for the project.

5 Canadian Arctic Gas has
6 conducted three tests on 48-inch by 0.720-inch Grade 70
7 pipe, manufactured in compliance with its specifications.
8 These tests were conducted at temperatures and pressures
9 close to those contemplated for the proposed pipeline
10 system. In addition, predecessor study groups each
11 sponsored two tests. These four earlier tests were con-
12 ducted at conventional temperatures on pipe with lesser
13 wall thicknesses than the pipe now proposed.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 Q What did the tests show?

2 A The test showed that the
3 fracture arrest behaviour of the proposed main line
4 pipe at the design temperature and pressure cannot be
5 consistently predicted by the Battell hypothesis.

6 Therefore, our design is based on
7 adding mechanical reinforcing bands or similar devices
8 at suitable spacings along the pipeline to assure con-
9 trol over the length of the possible fracture. Three
10 separate tests made to date show that reinforcing bands
11 can be used in the remote/^{event}of a fracture, to control
12 the length of fracture.

13 In none of our tests did a fracture
14 propagate through a reinforcing band. As stated
15 earlier, we also specify a notch toughness sufficiently
16 high that a defect would have to be very severe before
17 it would initiate a crack, and we can find defects much
18 smaller than this with our inspection procedures.

19 We specify other tests to ensure
20 that brittle fracture initiation and propagation will
21 not occur.

22 Q Have you satisfied yourself
23 that steels suitable to this pipeline are commercially
24 available?

25 A Yes. The steel industry
26 was advised of our concern for good mechanical properties,
27 especially notch toughness for the project. Because
28 of the size of the project and large tonnages of steel
29 that will be required, the steel industry was justified
30 in doing extensive research work, and effective liaison

1 was maintained with the individual steel companies as
2 well as the industry as a whole.

3 This resulted in the development
4 of commercial quality steels which meet our design
5 criteria.

6 Q Please discuss the weldability
7 of the pipe?

8 A First, seam weld quality.
9 Our pipe specifications require the same minimum notch
10 toughness for the seam weld as they do for the pipe.
11 These welding problems and their requirements have
12 been discussed and reviewed with the steel industry
13 and the manufacturers of welding electrodes and equip-
14 ment. The steel industry and pipe mills did a large
15 amount of work in developing weldable steels and develop-
16 ing welding procedures for the manufacture of the pipe,
17 and provided extensive test data on the seam welds
18 to us. These data show that the project specifications
19 can be met.

20 Second, girth weld quality. As
21 the pipe will be joined in the field by welding,
22 girth weld quality was likewise a consideration,
23 especially since much of the field welding will be
24 performed at low atmospheric temperatures.

25 Arctic Gas recognized that the
26 steels used in making the pipe must be suitable for
27 welding, both with respect to the manufacture of the
28 pipe and installation in the field. The compositions
29 of the steel were therefore limited to assure weldable
30 steels.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 and of manual welding processes was undertaken by
3 Arctic Gas which had numerous meetings with leading
4 welding rod manufacturers from the United States,
5 Canada, Europe and Japan, and with several companies
6 developing automatic welding processes. After the
7 companies had an opportunity to develop electrodes
8 and equipment that they believed suitable, plate and
9 pipe were submitted to the companies for their use
10 in the further tests and development work. The com-
11 panies then submitted their recommendations for rods
12 and procedures for evaluation by Arctic Gas. Welds
13 are presently being made and will be evaluated by
14 several laboratories. We are confident that this pro-
15 gram will be effective and that field welding will not
16 present any unusual problems.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Dr. Purcell,
18 before you go on; am I to take it that Arctic Gas is
19 considering automatic welding as well as manual
20 welding procedures? I take it automatic welding is
21 what the word implies?

22 A Yes, my understanding is
23 that the welding procedure that was contemplated when
24 the application was drawn up was manual welding.

25 Q Yes.

26 A Because at that time it
27 could be demonstrated that it could be done, but the
28 automatic welding provides generally more uniform
29 quality and possibly lower costs and it's being invest-
30 igated as an alternative.

1 Q Just so there's no misunder-
2 standing, you have some kind of automatic welding
3 machine, do you, when you undertake automatic welding?

4 A Yes, sir.

5 MR. MARSHALL:

6 Q Perhaps to clarify, you or
7 perhaps Mr. Holmberg, could describe the type of
8 equipment that's used in automatic welding?

9 WITNESS HOLMBERG:

10 A There have been several
11 automatic welding machines developed. One has been
12 used especially rather extensively. These machines
13 operate using gas for shielding. They use fine wire
14 for the filler metal, and the machine is mounted on
15 the pipe and has a small welding heads that move
16 around the pipe in sequence, making the welds.

17 This equipment has been used on
18 pipelines now, various types, for probably four ^{or} more
19 years, being used especially extensively in off-shore
20 operations where high speed welding is desirable, and
21 I understand one of these machines are now being used
22 on the Alyeska line, I'm not just sure what the status
23 there is.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well they
25 haven't begun laying pipe in the Alyeska line as yet,
26 have they?

27 A No, they are planning to
28 use it, and I understand are using it for some of
29 the double jointing.

30 I might correct myself a little bit

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

ALLWEST REPORTING LTD.
BURNABY 2, B.C.

1 on that too. There is going to be some storage facili-
2 ties made, using pipe, in which they plan to, as I
3 understand it, plan to test this equipment out further
4 on some of that work.

5 Q That's Alyeska?

6 A Alyeska.

7 MR. MARSHALL:

8 Q Sir, could you explain what
9 is meant by the term "fittings," or perhaps one of your
10 panel?

11 WITNESS PURCELL:

12 A Mr. Reid has done most of
13 the work on the fittings.

14 WITNESS REID:

15 A A fitting would be a steel
16 component which allows, usually allows two or
17 more pipes to be joined in a manner other than a straight
18 line.

19 A fitting would be used at a
20 branch connection or to allow the piping system to turn
21 a sharp corner, or to end off a piping system.

22 Q Thank you. Would you please
23 discuss the metallurgy of valves and fittings?

24 WITNESS PURCELL:

25 A Valves and fittings include
26 sections with greater thicknesses than the pipe.
27 The toughness requirements for valves, fittings and
28 flanges are aimed at preventing fracture initiation
29 since the length of propagation is limited by the size
30 of the part. A toughness level and inspection procedures

1 are then specified such that any defect remaining in
2 the part after final inspection and hydrostatic testing
3 is much smaller than the critical defect size at the
4 most severe operating conditions.

5 Q Please discuss metallurgical
6 aspects of pipe bending?

7 A The straining of the metal
8 associated with bending affects its mechanical prop-
9 erties, and it was considered adviseable to make
10 tests to determine the extent of the effect. Such
11 studies can best be made by laboratory tests. A
12 contract was therefore let to the University of
13 Alberta to conduct these tests. Their studies show
14 that the properties of the bent pipe are consistent
15 with the design criteria of the pipeline.

16 Q Turning now to the subject
17 of stress analysis, sir, what special design consider-
18 ations have been taken into account in the structural
19 design of the pipeline?

20 A We had to take into account
21 three special considerations related to the scale of
22 the project and the permafrost environment of much
23 of the pipeline:

24 (1) Forces which are resisted
25 by the soil at buried field bends in pipelines would
26 be large for the proposed pipeline due to its size.
27 These forces are caused by restraint to longitudinal
28 expansion or contraction of the pipe steel due to
29 temperature changes and by gas pressure. As a result
30 of these forces, movements of pipe will occur at the

1 bends. The solution to this phenomenon is to
2 establish limitations on bend angles to protect
3 against wrinkling at field bends during operation
4 of the pipeline and to prevent excessive bearing
5 pressures in the soil.

6 Parametric studies of the inter-
7 action between structural response of the pipeline
8 and the surrounding backfill and ditch wall for
9 overbend, sidebend and sagbend configurations were
10 undertaken. These studies used temperature and
11 pressure loadings expected along the route and geo-
12 technical inputs provided by the geotechnical study
13 groups.

14 (2) The potential for frost
15 heaving exists in a number of areas where the pipe-
16 line would be operated at temperatures below 32
17 degrees Fahrenheit. Differential frost heaving would
18 impose bending in the pipe in these regions. We have
19 established maximum allowable curvature changes in
20 the pipe, which were provided to the Geotechnical
21 Group for use in their designs.

22 (3) The pipeline route passes
23 through areas of generally low seismic activity.
24 Nevertheless, special work was done to develop seismic
25 design criteria and recommendations for the earthquake
26 resistant design of the pipeline system.

27 We undertook stress analyses
28 using loadings caused by earthquake motions in com-
29 bination with other design loadings such as those
30 caused by gas pressure and temperature differentials.

1 The results of these analyses indicate that stresses
2 caused by earthquake motions are relatively small and
3 will not pose a problem.

4 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
5 Dr. Price has prepared some slides and graphs to help
6 deal with this question of the loadings that a pipe-
7 line can be subjected to, and I would ask him now
8 to make that presentation.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 Dr. Price is attempting to recover from the flu and
2 a cold, and he has lost part of his voice so we will
3 have to bear with him.

4 WITNESS PRICE: The purpose
5 of this presentation, sir, is to explain the stress
6 analysis and the basis for changing curvature criteria
7 which has been discussed previously. The stress
8 analysis is concerned with stresses and strains that
9 will be imposed in the ^{pipe} by various loading conditions and
10 with the stability of the pipeline. The loading conditions
11 considered include gas pressure, temperature differen-
12 tial, earthquake motions, and a number of conditions
13 which will locally ^{bend} and change the curvature of the
14 pipe. These include differential frost heave, differ-
15 ential settlement, point uplift or also support and
16 movements at field bends.

17 To ^{help} demonstrate the signifi-
18 cance of the wrinkling and stability I will deal with
19 a few simple concepts and then get into it. First
20 of all consider a simple spring suspending like that.
21 If a load is applied to the end of the spring, we
22 extend its length, it will extend in tension and
23 increase in length; on removal of the load the spring
24 returns to its original length.

25 If an increasing load is
26 applied to the spring, a graph of load versus extension
27 can be drawn. This will typically be a straight line.
28 The extension of the spring is therefore proportional
29 to the applied load and the reversability if
30 the load is removed, in other words it

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

moves that to zero again.

Let us consider the case of a steel bar to which we will do the same thing. Suppose the bar is loaded with a tension of a load shown there, this load imposes a tensile stress in the bar which is equal to the load divided by the area, the steel, that is the cross-sectional area up there. As with the spring, the load will cause the bar to extend, the strain is defined as the extension divided by the original length of the bar that is the extension of D divided by L .

The strain is used instead of an absolute extension because it is independent of length and for a given stress would be the same for all lengths of the bar, so we are just making this whole system dimensional. As a result of the extension, the bar will tend to contract laterally as well as shown here, and the dotted line there depicts that contraction.

A graph of stress versus strain may be drawn as shown on the sketch for steels of the type to be used in the pipeline, this graph has an initial elastic range. However, at a certain stress called ^{the}portional limit, the graph starts to bend over and reduces in slope with increasing load application. The specified minimum use strength is a material specification for pipeline steel. That is defined as the stress at an 0.5% strain.

This, is determined, is required,

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 the specified property of the steel is determined
3 using a specified test. After passing the specified
4 minimum yield strength, we enter into what is known as
5 the strain hardening range and the steel can be stressed
6 a great deal more until it eventually breaks at a strain
7 of around 30 to 40%. The ultimate tensile strength is
8 defined as the maximum measured strength in the test
9 which the curve was developed from.

10 The only ultimate tensile
11 strength, the stress appears to decrease in the
12 engineering graph of stress versus strain, and the
13 steel eventually breaks. The measured strain, is as
14 I pointed out, in the order of 30 to 40%. That level
15 of strain is normally referred to as the ductility
16 of the steel which is a sort of broad term which defines
17 the ability of steel to deform under load.

18 A portion of the stress strain
19 curve, this is of interest in the stress analysis,
20 that is ^{where} strain is less than about 1 or 2% is drawn
21 here. Suppose I'll just describe some mechanical
22 properties of the steel, suppose the bar is loaded up
23 to the proportional limit and the load is then removed
24 or returned back to zero, and the strain will reverse
25 as shown there. However, if the stress or the load
26 is increased beyond the proportional limit up to, say
27 this point here, we would have some strain hardening
28 in the steel, and if this load is
29 now removed, the recovery will be down, the elastic
30 would be down this line here. We would have a

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 residual plastic strain imposed on the steel which I
3 have illustrated here.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: You say that
5 if you -- if the load ^{that} is applied is great enough, the
6 steel will be less elastic thereafter, is that what
7 you're saying?

8 A That is correct, for
9 continuing increase in that load.

10 Q Does that increase the
11 -- or does that lessen the resistance of the steel to
12 a brittle type fracture?

13 A Not really, no sir. I'm
14 not really concerned with the fracture aspects here.
15 Fracture, brittle fracture in a bare bar of this type
16 would occur under a really low temperature which is
17 called a fracture initiation transition temperature. A
18 premature fracture would occur if you had a flaw or
19 a ductile fracture, that is.

20 Q Well, excuse me, forgive
21 me for interrupting you, but when you get what you
22 describe, I think, as plastic strain --

23 A M-hm.

24 Q -- which results from
25 the load that is applied being beyond the proportional
26 limit, when you get that you have altered the quality
27 of the steel, I take it.

28 A Somewhat, yes. I'll be
29 getting onto that.

30 WITNESS HOLMBERG: May I say

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 a word? I don't think we should say that we lowered
3 the quality of the steel.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: I said
5 "altered".

6 A Oh, altered, yes, you've
7 altered the quality of the steel very slightly. What
8 you've done is actually increased the strength a
9 small amount, you have used up a very small amount of
10 the ductility, almost an insignificant amount, but
11 the steel continues to behave just the same as it
12 did before, but that the elastic limit has been slightly
13 increased, and we'd say the yield point has been
14 slightly increased.

15 Q I'm just trying to --

16 A This is something that
17 happens every time you take a piece of steel and
18 form it, for example, you take a flat plate and form
19 it into a pipe. You are exceeding the elastic limit
20 and getting this plastic deformation that we talked
21 about before, and in a sense creating a new set of
22 properties, as far as the steel is concerned. This is
23 the reason that we measure our properties on the finished
24 pipe, not on the plate that goes into it.

25 THE COMMISSIONER:

26 Yes, yes, I understand
27 that. Well, it looks as if you've got some formulae
28 there, Dr. Price, and we've had trouble with those
29 before. All of these gentlemen here have to have some
30 understanding of what you're talking about, and per-
haps I could ask them, is this all sinking in or is it

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1
2 heading above you and hitting the back of the room
3 somewhere?

4 MR. SCOTT: Who are you going
5 to begin with, Mr. Commissioner?

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Do you speak
7 for everyone?

8 MR. SCOTT: I will have to
9 read the transcript, I am afraid.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I was
11 going to say that this is fairly heavy going. That's
12 no reflection on you, Dr. Price, it's obviously diffi-
13 cult material. I wonder if, since we're getting close
14 to the hour of adjournment, Mr. Marshall, if there is
15 any way of making it a little easier to comprehend?
16 I'm obviously not wholly taking it in. The members
17 of your panel would regard that as an under-statement,
18 I'm sure, but --

19 MR. MARSHALL: Well, perhaps,
20 sir, given the hour, we might adjourn and come back
21 fresh in the morning with hopefully a simplified
22 version of this presentation that would make some of
23 these things a little easier for all of us.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, this
25 group of eager students over here on the left, I
26 think --

27 WITNESS PRICE: They went.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we'll
29 adjourn, Dr. Price, and don't let anyone lead you to
30 believe this is any reflection on your prodigic

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

capacity, it's difficult stuff and I'm afraid we're
difficult students, so see what you can do overnight,
Mr. Marshall, and we'll adjourn until nine in the
morning.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO APRIL 15, 1975)

347

M835

Vol. XXIX

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

TITLE

Vol. XXIX

14 April 1975

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

347

M835

Vol. XXIX

CA1
Z 1
-74M21

TORONTO LIBRARY

Government
Publication

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN
ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY
THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN
THE YUKON TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRI-
TORIES FOR THE PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE
VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL
AND ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONS-
TRUCTION, OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT
OF THE ABOVE PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 15, 1975

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

VOLUME XXX

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 23 1975

LIBRARY

APPEARANCES:

1		
2	Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
3	Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
4	Mr. Alick Ryder and	
5	Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley
6		Pipeline Inquiry;
7	Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.	
8	Mr. Jack Marshall,	
9	Mr. Darryl Carter and	
10	Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas
11		Pipeline Limited;
12	Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.	
13	Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines
14		Ltd.;
15	Mr. Russell Anthony, and	
16	Prof. Alastair Lucas	for Canadian Arctic
17		Resources Committee;
18	Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
19	Mr. Gerry Sutton	For Northwest Territories
20		Indian Brotherhood and
21		Metis Association of the
22		Northwest Territories;
23	Miss Lesley Lane	for Inuit Tapirisat of
24		Canada and
25		The Committee for Original
26		Peoples' Entitlement;
27	Mr. Ron Veale and	
28	Mr. Allen Lueck,	for Council for Yukon Indians
29	Mr. Carson H. Templeton,	for Environmental Pro-
30		tection Board;
	Mr. David Reesor,	for Northwest Territories
		Association of Munici-
		palities;
	Mr. Murray Sigler,	for Northwest Territories
		Chamber of Commerce.

347
4835
Vol. XXV

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 23 1975

LIBRARY

I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

Hoyt PURCELL
Graham George KING
Carl M. KOSKIMAKI
Milton E. HOLMBERG
John T. McMULLEN
Patrick S.T.J. PRICE
Kenneth E. RATHJE
Cameron M. REID
- In Chief (cont'd)
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Gibbs

3716
3768

EXHIBITS:

(Volume XXIX, April 14, 1975)

- 104 List of Reports, Purcell Panel
105 Design Panel, errata to Section 8-B of
original application
106 Witness Resumes, Purcell Panel
(Volume XXX, April 15, 1975)
107 Minutes of Meeting of Metallurgy Sub-
Committee

1 Yellowknife, N.W.T.

2 April 15, 1975

3
4 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

5
6 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner,
7 it appears not too optimistic to say that my turn
8 for cross-examination might come this morning.

9 During the course of it, I will
10 be asking the witnesses to refer to a portion of
11 the Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline filing which has not
12 yet been marked as an Exhibit. It may be that those
13 who want to follow the references to the volume will
14 want to equip themselves with it before cross-examin-
15 ation starts.

16 I expect that Mr. Marshall has
17 something to say about marking it as an exhibit, but
18 we would meet that when it comes.

19 The document is entitled
20 "National Economic Effects of the Applicant's
21 Proposal", Section I4b, and it's -- and it's also
22 entitled "Second Supplement to the Application of
23 Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited", and was executed
24 where else but Toronto, on January 23rd, 1975.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you,
26 Mr. Gibbs.

1 MR. MARSHALL: We left off
2 yesterday, sir, with Dr. Price. He was making a pre-
3 sentation dealing with the various loadings on the
4 pipe. He's back again in better health, and carry
5 on with his presentation.

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Fine, fine.

7 HOYT PURCELL

8 GRAHAM GEORGE KING

9 CARL M. KOSKIMAKI

10 MILTON E. HOLMBERG

11 JOHN T. MCMULLEN

12 PATRICK S.T.J. PRICE

13 KENNETH E. RATHJE

14 CAMERON M. REID, Resumed:

15
16 DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL, CONTINUED:

17
18 WITNESS PRICE:

19 A What I want to do this
20 morning, sir, is show you some slides of some tests
21 which were undertaken at the University of California
22 and these will demonstrate what wrinkle looks
23 like and what we are doing is the stress annalysis.

24
25
26 As I mentioned yesterday, the loads
27 that we consider are the pressure, the temperature
28 differential and bending due to various effects, which
29 include frost heave, settlements, and movements of bends.
30

1 After I show you these slides
2 of these tests, I will go into a number of applicat-
3 ions with some simple little drawings and show you
4 their significance in the field.

5
6 Before we get onto that however,
7 I would just like to go back to this stress strain
8 curve we went onto yesterday, and just clarify a
9 few points.

10 As I mentioned, this is a bar
11 loaded in uni-axle tension and I define the
12 strain merely as the extension divided by its original
13 length and the stress is merely a load divided by
14 the cross-sectional area of the bar. That's just the
15 definition of these quantities.

16 Now, if they load this bar up to
17 the elastic range curve, in this range here, and at the
18 proportional limit will bend over if you like. The
19 elasticity decreases or the stiffness decreases and
20 it is easier to extend the bar and the curve flattens
21 off. The steels for the pipeline are designed or
22 required, are specified to have, to be able to extend
23 a great deal before they eventually reach
24 the ultimate tensile stress where it will eventually
25 break. This range of strain is known as the ductility.

26 The point I am trying to get
27 across is the pipeline steel will be ductile
28 for static loading conditions. A brittle material,
29 brittle failure occurs in tension condition.
30

1
2 Brittle failure will normally
3 occur within this region here. Now a pipeline is
4 subject to stresses in the hoops -- hoop direction
5 which is due to the pressure, hoop stress, and to longi-
6 tudinal stresses due to pressure and temperature
7 differentials.

8 A buried pipeline is restrained so
9 it is normally in compression underground, and
10 you don't worry about brittle failure in compression.
11 What you worry about is what is known as instability,
12 and that is wrinkling or overall bucking of a column,
13 for example, that sort of effect.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: That's some-
15 thing that you said was owing to the pressure ?
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

A The actual
compression?

Q No, I'm sorry.
You said that with a pipeline you worry about wrinkling
and buckling.

A Right.

Q Did you say -- I don't
know whether I heard you correctly -- did you say that
was owing to pressure?

A This effect is caused
by an actual compression load^{which is developed} in the pipe by gas
pressure, longitudinal effect, and by temperature
differential. A temperature differential is a change
in the pipe steel from the time that it's installed
in the ditch to a maximum operating gas temperature
or minimum temperature, it varies. Of course the
pipeline is restrained, it can't expand and a compressive
force comes up and if it's too much you get this sort
of effect.

Now some full-scale tests
were undertaken at the University of California for
the Alyeska Pipeline Company on 48-inch diameter
pipe. Here is a schematic drawing of the test arrangement;
the pipe is approximately 30 feet, I think. It is loaded
with the actual load to simulate the pressure and the
temperature differential effects imposes an actual,
along there, a compressive stress in the pipe and was also
subjected to internal pressure, high pressure, the
normal pipeline application. The actual loads were

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1

2

then applied to bend this pipe and the strains and curvature changes associated with this work with each application of load were measured.

5

6

7

8

Q Just before you tell us about this test, was the pipe that was tested the same pipe that has been specified for the Arctic Gas Line through Canada?

9

10

11

A No sir, it had a lower specified minimum yield stress and a smaller wall thickness.

12

13

14

15

Q Whatever that pipe, in terms of stress and strain, whatever it was able to resist, you would be able to say for the Arctic Gas pipe, is that correct?

16

17

18

19

20

21

A There is strong evidence to suggest that the thicker wall thickness of our pipe for any given diameter can take a larger amount of bending before it wrinkles. Now, here is the test configuration as the loading frame in which the pipe was mounted and the actual load applied.

22

23

24

Q Excuse me. Can you gentlemen see this? If you can't -- can you see what -- all right, they can all see, apparently.

25

26

27

28

29

30

A Here is the formation -- the initial formation of a wrinkle, and this is the condition which we guard against when the pipe is subjected to bending. This wrinkle forms across a large compressive strain, in these tests it was in the order of 0.7%.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1

2

3

wrinkle?

4

Q Would you point to the

A That's it.

5

6

pipe?

Q That ridge around the

7

A Yes.

8

9

M R MARSHALL: Dr. Price,
perhaps you could hold the mike and speak directly
into it so others in the audience can hear more
clearly.

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

A Yes, this bulging here
is a wrinkle. It starts on the compression side of
the pipe and then progresses around it, as per bending
curves. Here is a slide, a picture of the wrinkle
that has formed all around the pipe, as you can see
it is quite pronounced. I have got a closeup of that
I will show next. The point to note here is that
the deflection at which they stop pulling this pipe^{were in the order}

of 20 times those when the wrinkle first initiated.
We base our design criteria to strains lower than those
which occurred when this occurred here.

Here's a closeup of that
wrinkle, with the gross wrinkle after it's formed all
around the pipe.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskima Ki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

THE COMMISSIONER:

1 Q You described that ridge
2 around the pipe as the wrinkle What about the longi-
3 tudinal change in the pipe? Is that what you call a
4 buckle or --

5 A This is a longitudinal
6 effect. It can be considered as a buckling longitu-
7 dinal in the wall. It is a local crimping up
8 caused by longitudinal stress. Longitudinal strain,
9 rather, in-elastic plastic strain. That's all the
10 slides I have.

11 Another point to note is that
12 the formation of that large wrinkle the full
13 pressure was still in the pipe, and that was in the order
14 of 950 pounds. the pipe was still fully pressured in the
15 order of 950 pounds.

16 Q You mean there would have
17 been no escape of gas?

18 A Right.

19 Q As if it had been
20 carrying gas.

21 A Right.

22 Now, the design, to prevent
23 this occurring we limit what is known as the
24 curvature. I put it together here to show you what
25 a curvature is. Here I have got a section of pipe which is
26 subjected /to some sort of bending and I have taken a little
27 element out of here, which I have enlarged here, as
28 a result of the bending, a radius, a curved
29 radius is imposed on the pipe. This is called the
30 radius of curvature.

1 And the reciprocal if that is
2 called the curvature, it is just a convenient term but
3 divided by one, you get the radius out if the pipe is bent.

4 MR. MARSHALL: Dr. Price, do
5 you think you could hold the mike up?

6 WITNESS PRICE:

7 A In the bending the pipe
8 on the blue side of the curve a compressive
9 strain is imposed. This varies linearly
10 through to that side, where you have a tensile strain.
11 And in this area here, a wrinkle will form at a
12 certain curvical compressive strain.

13 Differential heave will impose
14 bending on the pipe and change the curvature.
15 As shown here, here is a length which is heaving up.
16 That's what happens. The amount of movement which
17 can occur is strongly dependent on the geometry over
18 which heave occurs, and this is a simple configuration.
19 It is dependent on the geometry, the size of the
20 temperature differential which is applied to the pipe,
21 dependent on the gas pressure, all these things
22 influence the bending behaviour of the pipe, and for
23 that reason, we limit the curvatures because that is
24 a sensitive parameter in the pipeline, rather than
25 absolute movements.

26 However, for design purposes we
27 are working on techniques now to model the interaction
28 with the pipe and with the frost bulb to predict these
29 movements for design purposes.

30 The same thing occurs for

1 differential settlements. Once more the amount of
2 settlement it can tolerate is dependent on the geo-
3 metry, that is the length, the gas pressure, the
4 temperature differential, and the overburden weight,
5 the weight of the soil pushing it down.

6 In some areas where buoyancy is
7 a problem, I believe the pipe will be normally weighted with
8 concrete weights at a close spacing, and stop the
9 flotation. However, some areas may be desirable to
10 use anchors and for a case like that, it will be
11 necessary to consider the buckling effect due to the
12 actual load, the temperature differential and the gas
13 pressure. The criteria is to limit the length between
14 anchors so that doesn't occur.

15 A similar thing occurs at loss
16 of support, we can predict a safe span for
17 loss of support, although this will not be a normal
18 construction procedure, it is purely for guidance as
19 to what will be a safe span should this occur,
20 and the objective of this span will be to prevent
21 this overall in stability.

22 At changes of alignment, the
23 pipe is bent in a bending machine to impose a residual
24 curvature. After the pipeline is put into operation,
25 the effects of these changes in alignment is to cause
26 an unbalanced component to the actual force which is
27 developed by the gas pressure and the temperature
28 differential. This resists, I've shown it diagram-
29 atically here. This is resisted by the soil bearing
30 pressures or by the weight of soil at overbends.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 The effects of this force is to
2 tend to push the pipe into the ground like that. The
3 governing load condition here is a temperature differe-
4 ntial, and the higher this becomes, the more drastic
5 this force is. For north of the 60th parralel, however,
6 the differential that we expect during the design
7 which will be of a maximum order of 72 degrees
8 Fahrenheit.

9 MR. MARSHALL: Could you hold
10 the mike a little closer, Dr. Price?

11 WITNESS PRICE:

12 A It will not lead to any
13 serious problems.

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 Here I have drawn some field
3 bends. Here is an overbend configuration and I have
4 shown it lifting off the ground as a result of an
5 increase in temperature. The amount of this movement
6 would depend on the temperature differential once more,
7 and on the weight of the soil overlying it. The criterion
8 here is to provide sufficient overlying soil to prevent
9 excessive movement which could wrinkle the pipe in
10 that area, or which could cause the pipe to push out
11 of the ditch and buckle. This is ^{the} criterion for depth
12 of burial which we feed to the-- which the geotechnical
13 design would establish.

14 The areas of side bend, a
15 similar effect occurs. It is a lateral movement pushing
16 into the soil which is resisted by bearing pressure
17 of the soil. It has a typical distribution. This
18 movement once more depends on the magnitude of the
19 temperature differential and on the type of soil that
20 is supporting the pipe. for very weak soils
21 this movement would be larger than it is for very
22 strong till type soils.

23 The criterion here once more
24 is to limit these movements so that you don't wrinkle
25 the pipe, that you don't excessively fail the soils
26 so that the pipe could fail in a buckling mode and
27 push out of the ditch. A similar condition exists
28 for sag bends, sag bends are a similar condition as
29 side bends. It poses a bearing pressure on the soil
30 on the bottom and moves downwards. That is all I've

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

got, sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: Could I ask
you one question, Dr. Price?

Q You said that the
tendency to wrinkle or buckle depended on a number of
things, but let me just put it to you this way. You
have the gas, the pressurized gas in the pipe. Then
around the pipe you have the earth, it may be frozen,
unfrozen, it may be weak, it may be strong. I think all
of us ^{as} laymen understand that; but you said it depended
as well on temperatures. Would you just explain to
me what you meant by those temperatures?

A The buckling depends
on temperatures.

Q Did I get you correct?

A Yes. What I am getting
at there is the temperature differential that is a
load condition which imposes a longitudinal strain on
the pipe, and it is this strain together with -- added
to that bending strain which causes that buckle to
form.

Q But what do you mean by
"temperature differential"? I'm sorry.

A Temperature differential
is an increase in temperature of the pipe steel from
a stress free situation when it is initially installed
in the ditch, and restrained. When it is buried, gets
restrained. Now if the steel temperature changes or
increases, it will want to expand; but the soil is

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 holding it back and it cannot, so it imposes an equivalent
3 strain or stress in the pipe to overcome that tendency
4 to expand. This effects, at bends, for example, the
5 bend wants to expand but cannot so it pushes in sideways
6 into the soil.

7 THE COMMISSIONER:

I see, thank you.

8 MR MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
9 in addition to the materials that have been circulated,
10 as being the substance of the evidence that is to be
11 given by this panel, I wish to have them address the
12 subject ^{of} above ground piping, which has been raised in
13 the cross-examination of the previous panel, and Mr.
14 Purcell will address this topic. The remarks that
15 he will make later in the testimony, I've had reproduced
16 and I have copies available for the other counsel. I'd
17 ask Mr. Carter to pass them around.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, thank
19 you.

20 MR. MARSHALL:

21 Q Sir, if we turn to the
22 prepared testimony and the topic of station design.
23 What were the responsibilities in the station design
24 section?

25 WITNESS PURCELL: This
26 section was responsible for the mechanical, electrical,
27 and local control design of the compressor, chilling
28 and cooling stations, and for preparing the cost
29 estimates for permanent materials (other than civil
30 structures) used in the station. As part of this res-
ponsibility, the section made estimates of noise levels

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 and emissions to be expected from the stations.

3 Q How were the stations
4 designed?

5 A Wherever possible, the
6 stations were designed using conventional practice.
7 Station mechanical equipment, pressure vessels and
8 control valves were located in buildings where practical,
9 for protection against climatic conditions. Equipment,
10 piping and pressure vessels which were located outdoors
11 were designed to operate safely at the ambient tempera-
12 tures which can be expected in the vicinity of the
13 proposed pipeline route. Buried or protected piping in
14 stations was designed to operate at temperatures down
15 to minus 20 degrees Fahrenheit, which is below the
16 minimum expected flowing gas temperature and below the
17 coldest expected ground temperature at pipe depth. The
18 stations were designed to operate by automatic control
19 with remote set-point adjustments from the Gas Control
20 Centre.

21 Q Would you describe the
22 various stations that have been designed for this
23 system north of the 60th Parallel?

24 A The stations on the pipe-
25 line system north of approximately Fort Simpson are
26 designed to chill the gas to temperatures below the
27 ground temperature in order to preserve the stability of
28 the permafrost surrounding the pipeline. There are 15
29 proposed stations located in this portion of the system
30 which are typically the same. The designs of the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 stations in this group are based on using a single
3 30,000 horsepower (ISO) -- now that's a method of
4 rating a turbine that measures its performance at sea
5 level and 59 degrees Fahrenheit -- turbine driven cen-
6 trifugal compressor package for main gas compression
7 and a closed loop propane refrigeration system for gas
8 chilling. The refrigeration system designs are based on
9 using a single gas turbine of approximately 17,000 horse-
10 power (ISO) for compressing propane. An exception is
11 station M-03 which is located at the Travaillant Lake
12 junction where a double chilling system using two
13 17,000 horsepower (ISO) turbines for compressing the
14 propane is required. Each refrigeration system is
15 designed to remove the amount of heat from the gas
16 stream equivalent to the energy imparted to the gas
17 by the gas compressor at the station, plus the heat
18 flux from the ground to the flowing gas between that
19 station and the next station upstream.

20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 There are four proposed stations
2 located in the transition zone between the chilled
3 portion of the system and the air-cooled portion of
4 the system, where the gas temperature can be allowed
5 to arise to conventional levels. No chilling or
6 cooling is necessary at these stations. The designs
7 of the first two stations in the transition zone are
8 based on using single 30,000 horsepower (ISO) turbine
9 driven centrifugal gas compresssor packages for gas
10 compression and are similar to those in the North
11 with the exception that the chilling facilities have
12 been omitted. The second two stations in this zone
13 require more horsepower because of higher flowing gas
14 temperatures. The designs of these two stations are
15 based on using two 27,500 horsepower (ISO) turbine
16 driven compressor packages at each station and are
17 similar to those stations in the air-cooled section
18 with the exception that the air-cooled heat exchangers
19 have been omitted.

20 Q Mr. Commissioner, Mr.
21 Koskimaki has a slide which shows the layout for a
22 compressor station and he would like to present that
23 and review the installations.

24 WITNESS KOSKIMAKI:

25 A This slide shows an
26 artist's sketch of a 30,000 horsepower station with
27 refrigeration. It's based on the preliminary layout
28 which is shown on the application.

29 The pipeline is located under-
30 ground on the upper left hand side of the station

1 site, approximately a hundred feet from the station
2 fence right through here. The gas flow goes from
3 left to right. The station block valves and the
4 station bypass valves are located underneath these
5 small buildings. Projecting above the ground are
6 shown the pipeline scraper traps.

7 The gas enters the station at
8 approximately 1385 psig and zero degrees Fahrenheit
9 under normal operating conditions. It passes through
10 this ^{inlet} block valve here, goes out of the ground and
11 enters the inlet scrubber building. The inlet
12 scrubbers are provided to remove any liquid or dirt
13 which may be entrained in the gas stream for pro-
14 tection of the centrifugal compressor.

15 Leaving the scrubber building,
16 the gas then enters the main compressor building
17 where it is compressed to a pressure of between 60
18 and 80 and 60 and 90 psig. This compression causes
19 the temperature to raise to approximately 24 degrees
20 Fahrenheit.

21 After compression, the gas flows
22 through this pipe here and enters the chilling build-
23 ing where it is refrigerated to a temperature of
24 approximately 12 degrees Fahrenheit. After refriger-
25 ation, the gas then comes back in the ground and
26 passes through this discharge ^{block} valve into the
27 main line at a pressure of 1680 psig.

28 When the gas reaches the next
29 station, approximately 50 miles away, it -- the
30 expansion down the pipeline will cause the temperature to
drop.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 back to zero degrees.

THE COMMISSIONER:

2 Q That's due to loss of
3 pressure?

4 A Yes, so the process can be
5 repeated at the next station.

6 Q So it comes in at --

7 A At zero.

8 Q At zero, you increase the
9 temperature --

10 A Yes, and chill it.

11 Q And you chill it?

12 A And it leaves at 12
13 approximately, and as it expands down the pipeline
14 it returns to zero again.

15 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner,
16 could you tell us the size of the area?

17 A This is 1200 feet this way
18 by 900 feet in width.

19 The refrigeration system which
20 we are using to chill the gas is a closed loop propane
21 system which operates by observing heat from the
22 gas stream to evaporate propane in the gas chillers,
23 which as I said before are located in this building
24 here.

25 The propane vapours then are
26 compressed in this building to a high enough level
27 so that cooling by ambient air temperature through
28 the heat exchangers or condensers will cause it to
29 condense. The condensed propane then enters this
30 receiver -- you can't see it very good there, but

1 there's a receiver there and from the receiver then
2 the liquids flow back through the economizer to the
3 chillers for re-evaporation.

4 The economizer is a pressure
5 vessel which takes a portion of the propane. It
6 allows a portion of the propane to vaporize at an
7 intermediate pressure and returns it to the compressor
8 at that interstage pressure to save on horsepower and
9 fuel.

10 The central heating system hot
11 water heaters and the electrical generators are
12 located in this building. The motor control centre
13 and the control room are in this building. These
14 buildings are the operating and maintenance buildings.
15 Equipment storage, garage, living quarters and water
16 storage. These tanks are the diesel fuel storage
17 tanks for operating and maintenance. These are
18 750 barrel storage tanks.

19 This tank here is -- receives
20 liquid from the inlet scrubbers for storage, should
21 any leakage happen to occur or be collected in the
22 scrubbers.

23 Away from the
24 buildings is shown the flow stock liquid
25 incinerator, and the fuel gas heater. That's about
26 it.

27 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Mr.
28 Koskimaki. Could you describe the manner in which
29 the station size was selected?
30

1 - WITNESS PURCELL:

2 A The station sizes were
3 selected as the result of an economic study consider-
4 ing those compressor units which were commercially
5 available at the time of the study. Calculations
6 were made to determine the number of stations using
7 each type of unit which would be required to deliver
8 an equal annual volume of gas at the end of each
9 section. The lowest total cost of own~~ing~~ and
10 operating the stations was the primary criterion in
11 selecting the station sizes. This is discussed fur-
12 ther in Section 8.b.1.2 of the Application.

13 Q What emissions will be
14 produced by the stations?

15 A Calculations were made to
16 predict ground level concentration of sulphur dioxide
17 and nitrogen dioxide (converted from nitric oxide)
18 around the stations using manufacturers' data for
19 emissions of oxides of nitrogen and assuming the
20 maximum levels of sulphur and hydrogen sulfide per-
21 mitted by the pipeline gas specifications. This pre-
22 diction was made using a wide range of wind velocities
23 and ambient conditions for a radius of up to 100,000
24 feet around the stations.

25 The results showed that the con-
26 centrations of either sulphur dioxide or nitrogen diox-
27 ide would not exceed the ambient air quality standards
28 of the Province of Alberta or the limits stated in
29 the Federal Clean Air Act. To the best of my know-
30 ledge there are no more stringent standards which

1 pertain to the areas where stations could be
2 located.

3 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
4 there is to be a further consideration of the quest-
5 ion of emissions as part of the second phase. You
6 have directed in the preliminary rulings that we deal
7 with the impact on air and it was thought that we
8 could deal with this subject in more detail then.

9 Q Can you comment on the
10 noise that will be generated by the compressor
11 stations?

12 A Calculations to predict
13 noise levels from the 30,000 horsepower stations with
14 refrigeration facilities and 55,000 horsepower stations
15 with cooling facilities have been made. The calculat-
16 ions were based on using manufacturers' sound power
17 level data from each noise source in the station.
18 The results showed that when using conventional
19 silencing the maximum noise levels at the station
20 boundaries would be about 70dBA and the maximum
21 levels 1,000 feet from the station boundaries would
22 be about 50dBA. Additional noise data appear in
23 Section 8.b.1.4.3. of the Application on page 17.

24 Q Could you give us a refer-
25 ence point, sir? Could you tell us what 70dBA
26 means or 50 dBA? What would that be equivalent to?

27 A Mr. Koskimaki did these
28 calculations. He could respond to that.

29 WITNESS KOSKIMAKI:

30 A 50dBA is more or less

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 classified as a quiet residential area. It's also
2 the limit which Alberta specifies is the maximum within
3 10 feet of any occupied residence.

4 Q And what about 70dBA?

5 A 70dBA is a level that more
6 or less you would expect in your living room while
7 you were running the vacuum cleaner or the T.V. was
8 on, a fairly loud level, or it would be the level
9 that you would find 100 feet from a freeway, say
10 something like 10 in the morning when it is being
11 fairly well used.

12 MR. MARSHALL: Sir, again this
13 is a subject that we propose to deal with further in
14 phase 2.

15 Q Turning, sir, to corrosion.
16 Would you please explain how the corrosion aspects
17 of the project were studied?

18 WITNESS PURCELL:

19 A Northern Engineering
20 retained expert consultants in the field of corrosion.
21 They reported to our corrosion engineer who was
22 responsible for liaison with the other sections of
23 Northern Engineering, directed several testing pro-
24 grams, and performed the administrative functions of
25 the section. We were also able to take advantage
26 of the experience and knowledge of the members of
27 the Corrosion Subcommittee established by the pro-
28 ject's sponsors. This Subcommittee met on a regular
29 basis to review our work and give advice on our
30 programs. Our consultants and our corrosion

1 engineer attended and participated in these
2 meetings.
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1

2

3

Q What is the significance
of corrosion to a pipeline?

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

A An effective corrosion
control program on any pipeline system considers
external, internal, and atmospheric corrosion.
External corrosion control for a buried pipeline has
historically been accomplished by using a suitable
coating, combined with the successful application of
cathodic protection.

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

It was therefore necessary
to determine what coating types would be suitable for
the construction and operation characteristics of this
pipeline and whether or not cathodic protection could be
applied successfully. Other factors that needed to be
considered were the electrical, chemical, and biological
characteristics of the soils surrounding the pipeline
and the susceptibility of the pipe to stress corrosion
cracking.

20

21

22

23

An effective internal corrosion
control program requires methods of controlling and
monitoring the gas composition to keep internal corro-
sion to an acceptable level.

24

25

26

27

28

29

The probability of severe
atmospheric corrosion on this project is low except
possibly in the northern marine environment. However,
to prevent any surface corrosion as well as for appear-
ance purposes, all exposed metal surfaces will be
painted.

30

Q Please describe the testing

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 programs and studies that were undertaken in these areas.

3 A A coating evaluation program
4 to determine suitable coating was carried out. This
5 coating evaluation was based on tests performed on
6 various coatings at low temperatures as well as the
7 past experience of our consultants, the Corrosion
8 Sub-Committee and the industry as a whole.

9 Cathodic protection test
10 installations were made at Sans Sault, Northwest
11 Territories, and at Prudhoe Bay, Alaska. Laboratory
12 and field tests were undertaken to determine soil
13 resistivities, the effect of temperatures on resistivi-
14 ties, and the effect of anode backfill and temperatures
15 on ground bed design. Laboratory tests were carried
16 out on low temperature polarization and corrosion
17 rates. A chemical analysis of soils was performed on
18 soil samples obtained from representative areas along
19 the pipeline route. A literature search on the
20 activity of bacteria in northern climates was made.
21 Tests were conducted to determine the susceptibility of
22 the proposed pipe to stress corrosion cracking.

23 A study of the internal
24 corrosion histories of operating pipelines was made to
25 determine the effect of various impurity concentrations
26 on the rate of pipe corrosion.

27 Q What are your conclusions
28 regarding the designs of the proje_{ct} from a corrosion
29 standpoint?

30 A The tests we have made

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 and the experience of the people involved in the corro-
3 sion studies indicate that conventional external coating
4 systems will give reliable service in a permafrost
5 environment and that a pipeline buried in permafrost
6 can be cathodically protected.

7 It has been well established
8 that at ambient temperatures or lower, and regardless
9 of impurities in a gas, there will be no corrosion if
10 there is no accumulation of liquid water or a liquid
11 water solution. Internal corrosion in the line can
12 therefore be controlled by limiting the amount of water
13 in the gas to a level that will preclude condensation
14 of liquid water and by providing facilities and pro-
15 cedures for removing any liquids that may temporarily
16 accumulate.

17 Q Would you describe, sir,
18 the communications system required to operate the
19 pipeline?

20 A The pipeline requires a
21 suitable facility such as a microwave radio system or
22 satellite system which would carry the following
23 sub-systems:

- 24 - private telephone network;
25 - data acquisition and supervisory control systems,
26 including (a) gas control system;
27 and (b) maintenance information system;
28 - mobile radio system;
29 - teleprinter system.

30 Preliminary designs of all

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 sub-systems were incorporated into the system design to
3 determine its required capacity. These designs were
4 based on projected voice communications traffic loads and
5 data transfer requirements derived from information
6 about the operating pipeline.

7 For the design that was the
8 basis of the application, a conventional microwave
9 system was selected. This selection was made very
10 early in the project before satellite systems and
11 digital microwave equipment became readily available
12 as proven designs. Cable systems were rejected because
13 of suspected problems with buried cable in permafrost,
14 and because of the unsatisfactory reliability character-
15 istics of buried cable which is often dug up and broken
16 if not buried deep enough. We are carrying on further
17 evaluations and may recommend the adoption of a
18 satellite system.

19 Q Please describe the
20 communications system required to construct the pipe-
21 line.

22 A If a microwave system
23 is selected for the permanent communications system, the
24 pipeline communications requirements during the con-
25 struction period would be satisfied by early construc-
26 tion of the permanent facility, or by temporary micro-
27 wave radio links to the construction camps. The degree
28 to which the existing telephone networks would be
29 extended to the construction camps over this microwave
30 equipment would depend on whether the microwave system

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 is owned by the pipeline or leased from the Telephone
3 Company. In the leased case, fewer communication re-
4 peater sites would be required than is shown in the
5 application. A mobile radio system with a mobile radio
6 console at each construction camp and stockpile site
7 would also be required.

8 Should a satellite system be
9 adopted for operating the pipeline, it would be imple-
10 mented as soon as required to provide communications
11 service for constructing the pipeline. In this
12 case, communications sites are required only at the
13 construction camps and stockpile sites. A mobile radio
14 system and some public telephone services would supple-
15 ment the satellite carried services.

16 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
17 Mr. McMullen has some slides and graphs that he would
18 like to present dealing with the communications
19 area.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Just a moment,
21 Mr. McMullen. This goes back to yesterday, Dr. Purcell,
22 and I just thought I'd ask you before it slips my
23 mind. You said yesterday at page 24 of the notes that
24 you presented that Arctic Gas was investigating auto-
25 matic welding as well as manual welding processes, and
26 you said that Arctic Gas might, for purposes of carrying
27 out the girth welding in the field, use automatic
28 welding machinery but that no decision had yet been
29 made by Arctic Gas. Now can you tell me if you know --
30 and if you don't know, I will understand -- can you tell

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 me when Arctic Gas is likely to have reached a decision
3 as to whether it will use welders in the field to carry
4 out the various welding procedures, or automatic
5 welding machinery?

6 A It would follow studies
7 that are under way now, and these studies are aimed
8 at developing techniques to weld, using both manual
9 processes and automatic equipment. It would depend
10 upon the results of those studies, and Mr. Holmberg, do
11 you know the timing on those, those tests?

12 WITNESS HOLMBERG: I think
13 we'll have a good many of those results within the next
14 six months or so.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, what
16 concerns me, Mr. Marshall, is that the decision will
17 bearing on the number of men employed in the field, wage
18 and employment opportunities on the project. How many
19 welders would -- this is probably in the application
20 somewhere because when the application was filed the
21 assumption was you would be using welders and not
22 automatic welding machinery -- but can you tell me
23 offhand how many welders were expected when the
24 application was filed to be employed on the project?

25 MR. MARSHALL: I don't know
26 if the panel has that information, sir.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: They may not.

28 MR. MARSHALL: The construction
29 panel certainly will in that they have the breakdown
30 of the manpower estimates that have been made. I can

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 certainly obtain further instructions on that point and
3 ensure that the construction panel deals in some
4 detail with the manpower and the techniques, if you like.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
6 won't pursue it then, but would you find that out for
7 the construction panel, would you find out these things:
8 When is Arctic Gas likely to reach a decision as to
9 whether it will in fact be employing welders on the
10 pipeline, or instead, using automatic welding
11 machinery? How many welders were intended to be
12 employed when it filed its application? Were any of
13 those welders or were any of those welding positions
14 intended to be opened up to northerners, and finally,
15 in Arctic Gas's northerner training program, have any
16 northerners been undertaking training as welders?
17 Was there any intention earlier of their undertaking
18 training as welders? That -- I raise those matters
19 just so that I don't let them slip by. So carry on,
20 then.

1 WITNESS HOLMBERG:

2 A Just one comment. I think
3 that one point that should be clarified, and that is
4 even though they use automatic welding, there will
5 still be a large amount of manual welding. The intent
6 is not to replace all the welding with automatic
7 welding, and in either event, why, my recollection is
8 that the number of employees will pretty much even
9 out because of the number of technicians or helpers
10 and men of that calibre that will be used.

11 THE COMMISSIONER:

12 Q Yes. Well I think that we
13 should know a little more about that, in fact I think
14 we should know a lot more about it, and it is some-
15 thing, Mr. Marshall, that you should be prepared,
16 through your witnesses, to explain at some length in
17 the construction panel.

18 MR. MARSHALL: Yes sir, this is
19 another of those areas that sort of falls between
20 two groups, if you like. There's an input from
21 design and there's an input from construction, and
22 we'll certainly follow through with the construction
23 panel and give you considerably more detail.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: I think this
25 is our kind of stuff:

26 WITNESS MCMULLEN:

27 A Mr. Commissioner, I
28 would just like to quickly review what is contained
29 in Section 8.b.7. of the application. It was
30 indicated that studies were underway to determine

1 an implementation method for the pipeline communicat-
2 ions system, and this would serve both the construct-
3 ion and the operations of the pipeline.

4 A microwave system, such as
5 depicted here, was described in the application primar-
6 rily to provide information on land use and costs.
7 Our objective in setting out design criteria for such
8 a system was to obtain reliable communications, ade-
9 quate capacity and to make sure that the implementation
10 schedule of the communications sytem was satisfactory
11 in the context of the proposed pipeline construction
12 schedules.

13 In addition to these general
14 objectives, we had two other prime objectives which
15 was to prevent the situation where the pipeline
16 activities would cause the degradation of the tele-
17 communication services in the north. And to cooperate
18 with the regulatory authorities and telecommunication
19 common carriers in the north, to serve the public
20 interest wherever possible.

21 Now, in these studies we were
22 looking at integrated communication systems to both
23 serve the construction and operation of the pipeline,
24 and we narrowed the implementation methods down to
25 three: The leased satellite system; the leased
26 terrestrial microwave system; and the company owned
27 and operated microwave system.

28 Now, I would like to digress
29 a bit to cover the area of capacity ⁱⁿ telecommunication
30 systems. On this slide we have one voice channel,

1 many voice channels and a medium for carrying them.

2 Now, a voice channel when it's
3 converted into a micromagnetic signal generally
4 occupies a band width between 30 hertz, and 3.1
5 kilohertz. Now, this is a standard telephone channel.
6 It's not the same spectrum that everyone talking --
7 for instance, a man's voice would contain more
8 energy towards the lower end and a woman's voice
9 towards the higher end, but the equipment that is
10 provided for telephone use generally has the standard
11 telephone channel.

12 Now, in long distance systems,
13 it would be very uneconomical and inefficient to have,
14 say one wire for every voice channel or one radio
15 channel, so we multiplexed the voice channels together
16 into a complex signal. In this case, we show a spect-
17 rum of 12 voice channels. This is known as a group
18 of voice channels which occupies the spectrum between
19 60 kilohertz and 108 kilohertz.

20 Now, it's possible to multiplex
21 many, many more voice channels, in fact up to 1,200
22 in such a manner. Now these multiplex voice channels
23 are modulated onto a carrier frequency in the case of
24 a microwave system, which is shown here in the centre.
25 This modulated carrier frequency occupies a band
26 width of 3 megahertz, and this represents a voice
27 channel capacity of approximately 300 voice channels.

28 Now, the band width that the
29 signal can occupy, the modulated signal can occupy,
30 is specified by the Department of Communications, and

1 the capacity is a result of that specified band width,
2 plus the characteristics of the microwave equipment.
3 This 300 channels, by the way, is typical of the
4 microwave networks that are operated by C.N. Tele-
5 communications presently in the north.

6 This is a schematic, it shows
7 some of the equipment relationships that we're dealing
8 with. This multiplex equipment here has many voice
9 channels coming into it, and it has a complex signal
10 containing the information of many voice channels on
11 one wire going to the microwave radio equipment.

12 The microwave radio equipment
13 modulates this complex signal onto the RF carrier
14 and it's transmitted up the transmission line to a
15 directional antenna, which is mounted high on a
16 tower. Now, the height of the antenna must be such
17 that line of sight between this antenna and the next
18 antenna is achieved.

19 Now, the distance that the two
20 antennas are apart depends on the topography of the
21 land, and in typical cases it's 20 to 30 miles apart.
22 However, the compressor stations on the pipeline are
23 on the average 47 miles apart, so between compressor
24 stations we must have a repeater station somewhere.

25 On the lower part of the view
26 graph we're dealing with the satellite system. The
27 term earth segment alludes to all of the earth
28 stations. The term space segment alludes to all of
29 satellites that are being used in the satellite
30 system.

Another term is transponder.

A transponder is equivalent to an RF channel in very simple terms, but in this case the transponder has a band width of 40 megahertz which would carry one network quality television signal.

The satellite system that we are looking at is the one from Telsat Canada, it has 12 transponders in a satellite.

To turn to something more applicable to the pipeline system. This is -- shows our estimate of the number of voice channels required for the pipeline system during operation. Typically 66 coming up from the south to Fort Simpson; typically 54 from Fort Simpson to Norman Wells, and typically 42 between Norman Wells and Inuvik and typically 30 between Inuvik and Prudhoe Bay.

Now, this is -- these channels are estimated from the number of people that would be required to operate the pipeline, the type of work they would be doing, the location of their work, and also on the amount of data that is required to be collected from the compressor and meter stations, and taken to the district offices, and also back to the gas control centre in Calgary.

Now, to put this in some context,

I would like to show the telecommunications network relevant to the pipeline, that C.N.T. or Canadian National Telecommunications will have in operation in 1976. Notice that along the Mackenzie Valley, there will be a microwave system capable of carrying

1 300 voice channels, but that's somewhat misleading,
2 because for instance between Fort Simpson and Norman
3 Wells, there also must be circuits assigned from
4 Hay River to Inuvik, so the capacity available in
5 this section here depends on really the circuit assign-
6 ment of the multiplex scheme, and it would be somewhat
7 less than 300.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 We had provided the suppliers
3 of communications with the functional specifications,
4 and one of the proposals that we received was from
5 a consortium of Telephone Companies, and they have
6 proposed to build a new microwave system along the
7 entire length of the pipeline, that is duplicating the
8 facilities that even now are being constructed for
9 1976. The capacity of these facilities will be certainly
10 greater than is required for the pipeline, and there
11 is potential for other telecommunication users in the
12 north to use this excess capacity, should it be built.

13 Now one of the other proposals
14 that we received was from Telsat Canada, who is a
15 satellite company, a domestic satellite company in
16 Canada, and this depicts the satellite system serving
17 the pipeline, and ^{notice} there are many, many air stations
18 built along the pipeline. Now these are stations that
19 would also have some excess capacity so there is a
20 parallel between that and the microwave system proposed
21 by the Telephone Companies.

22 I now have some slides that
23 we -- Telsat Canada has been kind enough to loan us,
24 and I would like to present them by way of further
25 information.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: At the
27 moment, Dr. McMullen, you say that Arctic Gas intends
28 to use a conventional microwave system. Is that a
29 firm decision or is that a matter that's under
30 review in the light of these proposals that have been

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 advanced by Telsat Canada and the consortium of
3 Telephone Companies?

4 A At the time that the
5 application was made we recognized that we were looking
6 at various implementation methods, and that the decision
7 had not been made, and that decision still has not been
8 made. So that we are in the process of going through
9 it now.

10 Canada has two telecommunication
11 satellites presently in space. Anik I is parked in a
12 geostationary orbit over the equator at 114 degrees
13 longitude, approximately straight south of Yellowknife.
14 Anik II is 109 degrees longitude, that's approximately
15 straight south of Fort Reliance at the other end of
16 the lake. Next month, Anik III will be launched and
17 it will be parked at 104 degrees longitude, and that's
18 -- that will be the full complement of satellites that
19 Canada will have up until these ones wear out, of
20 course. Anik I, which is the one shown here, has
21 nine of its transponders presently assigned. There are
22 two others which are held in reserve for backup in
23 case one of the other transponders fail, and there is
24 one spare channel which Telsat Canada have proposed for
25 the pipeline's use.

26 Now, the pipeline will actually
27 use about half of the one broad band channel on
28 Anik I, half of its capacity, so we are taking up
29 about 1/20th of one of these satellites by way of
30 using existing resources. The next one.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 This is a schematic again of
3 how the pipeline will be served. One of the channels in
4 Anik I will be used for operating the pipeline in the
5 primary mode, and it's shown going to the larger of the
6 two antennas on the first station here.

7 On Anik II we will have a
8 control channel which will monitor the health of Anik
9 I, so that should Anik I have a catastrophic failure,
10 that is the whole satellite go ^{some} way, it's possible to
11 switch over to Anik II, and we can see that in the next
12 slide.

13 Anik II is now serving the
14 pipeline, and when Anik II, if it should fail, pardon
15 me, we would first set up Anik II as the primary satellite
16 and the control would be moved to Anik III until such time
17 as Anik I was replaced again.

18 Here we see what the effects of
19 losing one earth station is on the system. Notice that it
20 would not affect any of the other stations if it fails.
21 Now I might mention that should the communications length
22 be severed to any compressor station, it will operate,
23 it will continue to operate in a safe, secure mode at
24 the last set of instructions received from the gas control
25 office.

26 This is a portable air station
27 which might possibly be used during the construction of
28 the pipeline, it provides a very flexible system.

29 This is the approximate size of
30 one of the earth stations at a District Office. There

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 would be, however, two antennas approximately the same size.
3 These would be located at Inuvik, Norman Wells, and
4 Fort Simpson, right next to the existing remote tele-
5 vision receiving air stations.

6 This last slide shows the
7 coverage possible from this satellite. In the Telsat
8 proposal they have proposed to service the pipeline,
9 the complete pipeline from the 49th Parallel here and
10 also including Alaska. That's the end of my slide show.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you
12 very much.

13 MR. MARSHALL: Q Mr. Purcell,
14 from your standpoint, what special considerations are
15 associated with (a) the East of Fort Simpson route
16 revision, and (b) the 42-inch supply line alternative?

17 WITNESS PURCELL: For the most
18 part, our work on these modifications was conventional.
19 IN each case we received route information from respon-
20 sible people and determined where the compressor
21 station should be located for optimum hydraulic perfor-
22 mance. These locations were reviewed by others for
23 conformance to their criteria concerning suitability
24 from the terrain and other environmental points of view,
25 and adjustments in the locations were made where
26 necessary.

27 In the case of a 42-inch
28 supply line alternative, we determined which compressor
29 stations would be required to be constructed earlier.
30 The need for earlier station construction to transport
the same gas volumes as a result of the larger pressure

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 drop in the 42-inch pipe, compared to the 48-inch
3 pipe used in the original application.

4 Q In your area of
5 responsibility are you satisfied that the pipeline
6 design is technically feasible?

7 A Yes. The engineering
8 designs in each of these areas have been performed
9 according to good engineering practice, using existing
10 and tested technology and within the project's con-
11 straints, the major system parameters have been selec-
12 ted to give minimum unit costs of transporting the gas.
13 The pipeline design therefore in my opinion, obeys the
14 rules for good engineering design and is technically
15 feasible. I will deal in turn with each of the design
16 areas for which the panel was responsible, and explain
17 the reasons why we believe the design is feasible.

18 1. Systems design. Four basic steps were taken in
19 the system design area to assure that our overall sys-
20 tem calculations were valid and gave correct results.
21 The first of these was to base all our system calcula-
22 tions on the fundamental physical laws. The second was
23 to use proven and well tested equations wherever
24 possible, provided we could also derive them from
25 the fundamental laws. Thirdly, we used experimental
26 data to check our techniques in new areas where this
27 was necessary. And finally, we spent considerable time
28 in carefully selecting realistic, practical data for
29 use in our techniques.

30 2. Pipeline design. The mechanical design of the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 pipeline, scraper traps, valve settings and measurement
3 stations uses designs that have proven to be reliable
4 in the gas transmission industry. The components for
5 these facilities are based upon sound material speci-
6 fications. We have a considerable amount of evidence
7 from manufacturers, based on their experience and tests,
8 that the essential requirements of these specifications
9 can be met.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

3. Metallurgy.

The majority of the developmental work on the materials specifications was performed by the Metallurgical Subcommittee which is composed of the principal metallurgists of several of the project's sponsors. Mr. Holmberg, representatives from Battelle Memorial Institute and Canadian Arctic Gas and Northern Engineering's metallurgists attended and contributed to the deliberations of this group. The Subcommittee members brought to the project a wealth of experience and knowledge and have been working intensively on the project since the fall of 1969. Their work has included numerous meetings with technical experts from companies manufacturing pipe and other components of the system. The purpose of the meetings was to compare the project's requirements with the manufacturers' capability so that material specifications could be developed that could be met by the manufacturers and would result in materials that were appropriate for the requirements of the project.

In discussions with the manufacturers, the Subcommittee indicated the need for evidence that the specifications could be met, especially with regard to requirements that were more stringent than in other specifications. In many cases, the manufacturers rolled pipe and fabricated pipeline components to our specifications, so that tests could be made to verify that the specifications requirements had been met.

1 Because of the degree of expert-
2 ise brought to bear on the metallurgical aspects of
3 the project, the thoroughness of the work, and the
4 confirming evidence from manufacturers, we are con-
5 fident that the metallurgical designs meet the require-
6 ments of good engineering practice.

7 4. Stress Analysis.

8 We are satisfied that the pipe-
9 line structural design is technically valid and that
10 the pipeline would remain serviceable under probable
11 applied and potential loadings. In establishing
12 design criteria, we relied on the past experience
13 and efficient operation of existing pipelines for
14 the usual conditions encountered in pipeline design.
15 For the special conditions applicable to this
16 project including stability at field bends and frost
17 heave, we developed modifications to a recognized
18 computer program to analyze stresses and deformations
19 in buried line and the interaction between buried
20 pipe and frozen and unfrozen soils using modern
21 analytical methods. Results of analyses using this
22 computer program assisted the geotechnical study
23 groups in establishing geotechnical criteria designed
24 to assure the integrity of the pipeline. For earth-
25 quake loadings and seismic design criteria, we relied
26 on the recommendations of Dr. N.M. Newmark, who is
27 well known for his expertise in seismic resistant
28 design.

29 All structures, including schools,
30 churches, high rises, et cetera are vulnerable to

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 extreme contingency type loading and so would be
2 the pipeline. The stress analysis does not consider
3 this type of loading condition, which includes
4 massive landslides, washouts, et cetera. The design
5 approach is to locate the pipeline so as to avoid
6 such areas.

7 5. Station design.

8 The design of the compressor
9 stations wherever possible incorporates well proven
10 concepts. The chilling stations are based on con-
11 cepts proven reliable in the gas processing industry.
12 The components used in the high-pressure gas piping
13 in the stations are based upon the same material
14 specifications and supported by the same evidence
15 discussed under Pipeline Design.

16 6. Corrosion.

17 Pipe coating materials and
18 cathodic protection systems have been determined to
19 be effective in a permafrost environment. The
20 remainder of the corrosion concerns differ little
21 from those for a conventional pipeline and corrosion
22 can be controlled by well proven procedures.

23 7. Communications.

24 The communications system
25 design underlying the application is a conventional,
26 well-proven design. We have considered and satis-
27 fied in the design the need for unusually high unit
28 reliabilities due to the length and complexity of
29 the pipeline system. Other types of communications
30 systems are available to us and may provide even

1 more reliable service. This is one of the most
2 important factors that will be considered when a
3 communications system is selected for final design.
4

5 Q Mr. Purcell, I would like
6 you to deal with the question of above ground pipe,
7 the materials that I circulated a few moments ago.

8 Has consideration been given to
9 placing the pipeline above ground?

10 A It has been suggested from
11 time to time and because of the discussions that have
12 taken place in these hearings earlier, I thought it
13 was a good idea to put down all our thoughts, so what
14 I am going to read reflects the feeling of this group
15 of people, and it has been reviewed by Dr. Clark on
16 the geotechnical group and he is in accord with what
17 it says.

18 The traditional method of
19 installing cross-country gas-transmission pipelines
20 in North America is buried construction, regardless
21 of the terrain crossed. Above-ground construction
22 is used rarely and then only in special circumstances,
23 such as at crossings of rivers with unstable and
24 unpredictable channel action. The original concept
25 for the Arctic Gas Pipeline included the traditional
26 buried construction method, with gas chilling in
27 permafrost regions to avoid melting the permafrost.

28 The reasons for initially select-
29 ing the buried construction mode included:

30 1. Pipeline companies are

1 familiar with and have confidence in the buried mode.

2 This was back in 1969 when we
3 started on this project, and I think point number 1
4 simply relates to the fact that you start on something
5 new at the point which you're most familiar with it.

6 2. A buried pipeline is much
7 less vulnerable to damage by man. An above-ground
8 pipeline could be subject to damage during right-of-
9 way maintenance activities, by other construction
10 activities, and by deliberate acts by man.

11 3. An above-ground pipeline
12 would present a barrier to migrating animals.

13 4. An above-ground pipeline is
14 aesthetically undesirable.

15 5. An above-ground pipeline
16 would have to be insulated so that hydrocarbon liquids
17 would not form in the gas at low ambient temperatures.
18 Alternatively, the gas transported would have to be
19 primarily methane (the lightest hydrocarbon component
20 of natural gas), which would seriously reduce the
21 energy-carrying capacity of the pipeline and would
22 present the gas-processing plants with the problem of
23 disposing of the heavier hydrocarbon components.

24 6. Once the pipeline is insulated,
25 chilling stations would be required to prevent the
26 flowing gas temperatures from increasing to unaccept-
27 ably high levels as it is compressed at successive
28 compressor stations. As a result, there would be no
29 difference in the station compression and chilling
30 facilities between a buried and above-ground pipeline.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
In Chief

1 7. A special metallurgical design
2 might be required for an above-ground pipeline. During
3 a pipeline shutdown or before going into operation,
4 the pipe temperature would gradually approach the
5 ambient temperature. For a buried pipe that has been
6 shut down, the pipe temperature will be the same as
7 the ground temperature, which in the wintertime is
8 much warmer than the air temperature. The low
9 temperatures to which an above-ground pipeline would
10 be exposed could require steel properties which might
11 be unattainable in large-volume production or might
12 be prohibitively expensive.

13 8. An above-ground pipeline
14 would require larger concentrations of methanol in
15 the test fluid, because the test fluid would reach
16 a lower temperature than in a buried pipeline.

17 9. An earthquake resistant
18 design would be more difficult for an above-ground
19 pipeline, especially if it had to be elevated at
20 intervals to provide passages for animals.

21 Some information from Russia
22 was available at the time the initial studies for
23 the Arctic Gas pipeline commenced, which indicated
24 that the Russians were planning to construct their
25 gas pipelines in permafrost on pile supports, rather
26 than use the buried construction mode. Because
27 the information related only to planning -- this was
28 again back in 1969 -- rather than reflecting
29 experience, it did not weigh heavily at these early
30 stages.

1 Attempts have been made to gain
2 information from the Russians as to their experience
3 with construction of gas pipelines in Siberia.
4 Although exchange visits have been held, limited
5 information has been obtained, certainly there has
6 been insufficient reliable information upon which we
7 could base our design. Mr. Fielder of Arctic Gas,
8 who has been involved in these exchange visits, will
9 be giving evidence as part of the Construction Panel.

10 After reviewing the pros and cons
11 of above-ground versus buried construction, the Arctic
12 Gas engineers continued to use the buried mode as
13 their prime design technique, and put the above-
14 ground mode on the shelf to be used only in the event
15 insuperable problems with the buried mode emerged.
16 Geotechnical studies and design were concentrated on
17 overcoming the problems encountered with the buried
18 mode, such as frost heave, slope movements, and the
19 maintenance of drainage. The geotechnical people
20 now state they are confident they have solutions for
21 these problems.

22 A study was done recently to
23 compare the costs of above-ground versus buried
24 construction for portions of the route from Wrigley to
25 the 60th Parallel.

26 This was more precisely from
27 Milepost 500, which is about the Black Water river
28 crossing on the pipeline route to the 60th
29 Parallel. This section was identified and its
30 characteristics were developed by Dr. Clark's people.

1 In this 300 mile long section
2 where the pipeline is proposed to operate in the
3 chilled mode, about 200 miles of the terrain is un-
4 frozen. The unfrozen terrain appears in about 30
5 percent of the route in the northern most spread in
6 this section -- that's the construction spread -- and
7 increases at the southern end to a level such that
8 an above-ground pipeline would not be buried as it
9 crosses the very short frozen areas. The study was
10 based on burying the pipe in the frozen sections and
11 installing it on pile supports in the unfrozen
12 sections.

13 A very preliminary design for
14 the above-ground sections was prepared in order to
15 be able to produce cost estimates. The pipe was
16 assumed to be supported at 100 foot intervals on 35
17 foot long 20 inch diameter supports.

18 I'm afraid, Mr. Marshall, we've
19 left out a line here. I think this said that anchors
20 were assumed to be installed at about 2,000 foot
21 intervals, and the pipe to be insulated and placed
22 in a zig- zag configuration to provide the needed
23 flexibility for temperature changes. Timber crib-
24 bing between pile supports would be used to
25 accommodate the increased load during hydrostatic
26 testing, and then removed. No special metallurgical
27 designs were used, as the extensive studies and
28 tests required to produce these designs have not
29 been done.
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 The cost estimates showed that installing 200 miles of
3 pipe above ground in the 300-mile section would increase
4 the costs by the following amounts. The costs are shown
5 in 1974 dollars, and do not include indirect costs.
6 About 50% would have to be added to account for cost
7 escalation and indirect costs.

8 Indirect costs include
9 interest charges and so forth.

10 Now there is a tabulation of
11 categories of cost, they are expressed in millions of
12 dollars of extra cost for the above-ground installation.
13 Pile supports \$188 million dollars.
14 Insulation \$ 53 million dollars
15 Savings in ditting,
16 backfill, cleanup & berms -- that's a savings or a
17 credit to the above-ground installation of 31 million
18 Cost of special metallurgical designs is not included.
19 The total extra cost is \$210 million. This extra cost
20 can be compared to the estimated cost of constructing this
21 300-mile section in the buried mode of \$339 million.
22 So it's an increase of about 60%.

23 I said earlier that an above-
24 ground pipeline is more vulnerable to deliberate or
25 accidental damage than is a buried pipeline. If the
26 above-ground pipe were damaged severely enough to
27 initiate a fracture, we believe that the pipe might
28 fail over an extremely long length, because of the
29 enormous energy released from the pipe during a failure
30 and the fact that it could very well prove impossible

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief

1
2 to design supports that would restrain the pipe, as the
3 ground does for a buried pipe. An above-ground pipe that
4 has failed would behave very much like an unrestrained
5 fire hose under pressure, whipping back and forth. This
6 whipping action could cause successive buckling so that
7 the failure would proceed indefinitely along the pipeline.
8 The ground prevents this type of behaviour for a
9 buried pipeline that has failed.

10 If a failure in an above-ground
11 pipeline did occur, it could be of sufficient length that
12 repairs could take weeks or months. This interruption
13 of revenue would be intolerable to the pipeline company.
14 If an above-ground pipeline had to be constructed, and
15 this restraint problem could not be overcome, the only
16 prudent design might be to install a second or
17 insurance line, similar to what is proposed for the
18 major river crossings. The cost penalty discussed pre-
19 viously would then more than double.

20 At the present, we have con-
21 cluded that short sections of above-ground pipe are
22 feasible, if their use is indicated at steep banked,
23 narrow watercourse crossings, for example. Pipe
24 similar to that proposed for compressor stations could
25 be used, which is available in relatively small quanti-
26 ties. Short sections of a few hundred feet could be
27 replaced in a day or two if they failed.

28 We have determined that
29 solutions are available to frost heave and other geo-
30 technical problems. There is then no reason to install

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
In Chief
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 long lengths of above-ground pipe, with their associated
3 cost penalty and their environmental and aesthetic draw-
4 backs. A buried pipeline provides the best solution.

5 Q Mr. Purcell, are there
6 any concerns pertaining to facilities design capacity
7 that were raised by the Board of the Government
8 Assessment Group, that the panel wishes to respond to?

9 A We're not, I don't
10 believe, prepared to respond to it right now, Mr.
11 Marshall. We have the information with us and we could
12 become prepared.

13 Q What reports and studies
14 does the panel rely on in support of its testimony?

15 A I believe there's a list
16 attached to the direct testimony that you distributed.
17 We rely on that list.

18 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, sir.
19 That concludes the direct presentation of this panel's
20 evidence.

21 You may wish to take the
22 coffee break before we get on with the cross-examination.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Perhaps we
24 might. I think Miss Hutchison will let us know if
25 that's feasible, as they say.

26
27 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. GIBBS:

28 Q Dr. Purcell, does your
29 design work include the Alaska and most northern border
30 group sections, as well as the Canadian sections?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 A We're responsible for the
3 design work of Alaskan Arctic Gas. We are not respon-
4 sible for the northern border work, or any other connec-
5 ting facility south of the 49th Parallel.

6 Q Mr. Dau when he was
7 giving his evidence on location, gave a general
8 reference principle for pipeline location to the
9 effect that all other things being equal, the most
10 economical location is the shortest distance between
11 the point of supply and the point of delivery. I am
12 going to ask you if we can't develop some similar
13 general principles for design, and I'd ask you to start
14 by turning to page 5 of your prepared evidence and
15 direct your attention to the last sentence on page 5,

16 "The third objective was that the pipeline
17 system should be an optimum design so that
18 it could be built and operated to transport
19 gas at a minimum unit cost."

20 Do you see that?

21 A Yes sir.

22 Q And Dr. Purcell, would
23 you care to agree with me that we could adopt that
24 to a general principle for design to this effect, that
25 you are expected to design the optimum pipeline system
26 to be built and operated in a given location, that
27 being given by the location group, for the transpor-
28 tation of given volumes of gas, of given composition,
29 at a minimum unit cost. Would that generally describe
30 what your group is required to do?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1

2

A I think so, yes sir.

3

It's Mr. Purcell, by the way.

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Q You and I are both in
that lesser academic category. I presume then since
this panel is concerned with minimum unit cost of
transportation, they can also talk about capital costs
and rates, tolls and tariffs.

MR. MARSHALL:

We had expected that

such matters would be dealt with at considerable
length by yourself and others before the National
Energy Board, and this panel is not prepared to get
into those subjects, Mr. Gibbs.

MR. GIBBS:

Well, the answer is that

this panel will not give those answers. Who gave you
the location for the design purposes, Mr. Purcell?

A The specific locations
were provided generally by Mr. Williams and the people
working with him.

Q And when were you given
the locations which enabled you to develop the design
that went into Exhibit 54?

A Is that the original
application?

Q Yes.

A I believe the route was
settled on in the middle of 1973.

Q On page 4 of your pre-
pared evidence, you say that-- right at the last
paragraph:

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 "Our general instructions from the project
3 sponsors, which were developed in part on
4 the basis of the studies we performed, included
5 the points of gas supply and delivery."

6 Were those developed by your group or by your sponsors?

7 A The points of ^{gas} supply and
8 delivery were developed by the sponsors.

9 Q And when were you given
10 those points?

11 A I don't think they've
12 changed since 1972, the two supply points and the two
13 delivery points.

14 Q All right. You also
15 say, your instructions developed in part on the basis
16 of your studies, included the gas composition. Who gave
17 you that, or did you develop the composition yourself?

18 A This is one of the
19 examples where our studies influenced the information
20 that was, relating to the information that was given to
21 us. We were given from the Prudhoe Bay producers
22 several alternative compositions, and we did studies
23 to determine which composition would give the maximum
24 amount of B.T.U. throughput in the pipeline.

25 Q Those several alternative
26 compositions were alternatives which a plant yet to
27 be constructed could deliver to the pipeline.

28 A That's correct, by
29 operating at slightly different temperatures.

30 Q And your influence was

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 felt, did you say, in the B.T.U. content?

3 A We did studies to deter-
4 mine which gas composition in a given system would
5 result in delivering the maximum number of B.T.U.s
6 throughout the pipeline.

7 Q And that has something
8 to do with the number of -- the amount of liquids
9 included in the gas.

10 A They are not liquids
11 at the pipeline conditions.

12 Q No, but they're liquids
13 at atmospheric pressure?

14 A That's correct.

15 Q And the third thing you
16 mentioned in that paragraph is the design gas volumes
17 for each operating year. Does that mean the average
18 day throughput in each operating year?

19 A Yes sir.

20 Q But you have to build
21 into your design sufficient capacity, I presume, for
22 peak day volumes also.

23 A That's correct.

24 Q Who provided the gas
25 design volumes for each operating year?

26 A They came from Mr. Horte.

27 Q And when were those
28 provided?

29 A I'm not sure, Mr. Gibbs.
30 I think they would have been in early 1973.

1 Q Can you tell me what the
2 max day volume is, for the fifth year, for example?

3 A The maximum capacity of
4 the pipeline?

5 Q Yes.

6 A They're shown in the
7 application.

8 Q in Exhibit 54?

9 A Yes, sir. I'm not -- well
10 I think Exhibit 54 is one volume, isn't it? The
11 flow diagrams are shown along with the design drawings,
12 I believe. The large sheets.

13 Q All right. Now, Mr. Purcell,
14 does the group with you there on the witness stand
15 represent the entire design group?

16 A They represent -- are there
17 other people in the group, do you mean?

18 Q Yes, was --

19 A Yes there are.

20 Q -- for example was there
21 a representative or representatives of Canadian Arctic
22 Gas as part of the design group?

23 A No.

24 Q Were there representatives
25 of the sponsor companies of Canadian Arctic Gas as
26 part of the design group?

27 A I think as I define design
28 -in
29 group, it is that group with/Northern GEngineering,
30 and its consultants that is supporting the parts of
the application that are listed here.

1 Q Now sir, other than those
2 items which we've touched upon, that is route supply,
3 delivery point, gas composition and volumes by years,
4 were the design group given any other input assumptions
5 to work on?

6 A The decision as to the pipe
7 size was not made by ourselves, it was made by Canadian
8 Arctic Gas.

9 Q Who specifically told you
10 what the pipe size was to be?

11 A They would have come to me
12 probably from Mr. Walker or Mr. Harvey, whoever was
13 in charge of engineering at Canadian Arctic Gas.

14 Q Both senior officers of
15 Canadian Arctic Gas?

16 A Yes.

17 Q I suppose, Mr. Purcell,
18 that with reference to the work that your group
19 does, there's a point in time when the design is
20 sufficiently firm that you can submit it to your
21 client for final approval and then go into the printing
22 process?

23 A Yes.

24 Q And when was that point
25 reached?

26 A You're speaking now about
27 the application material?

28 Q Yes.

29 A Mr. Gibbs, it went over
30 quite a period of time, the discussion on the

1 material that appears in the application.

2 It would have commenced in 1973,
3 and would not have been completed until shortly
4 before the applications were filed.

5 Q Shortly before March of
6 1974?

7 A Yes, sir.

8 Q Did you refer the whole
9 package at one time for approval, or would it have
10 been approved over the years bit by bit as some
11 part was finalized for design?

12 A It was reviewed section
13 by section.

14 Q Prior to the printing
15 process that resulted in Exhibit 54, were there any
16 changes made in your design by the client, or did
17 he accept each time your recommendations?

18 A I could be wrong, but I
19 think our designs were pretty much accepted, and
20 what most of the discussion centred about was the way
21 to express them in the application, the words that
22 went into the application.

23 Q So then, Mr. Purcell,
24 were you satisfied by March of 1974 that what appeared
25 in the application met the tests that you and I
26 agreed would -- or the principle would apply to design,
27 that you had designed the optimum pipeline system
28 to be built and operated in the location given to
29 you by Mr. Dau, to transport the volumes of gas
30 given to you by Mr. Horte of a composition

1 which you worked out with the producers at a minimum
2 unit cost?

3 A There were other consider-
4 ations that kept us in some cases away from the
5 minimum unit costs that are discussed in the applicat-
6 ion. The one that comes to mind, of course, is the
7 48 inch supply lines, where excess capacity was pro-
8 vided at a cost penalty, so that looping could be
9 deferred in the event the gas volumes increased above
10 the design levels.

11 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner,
12 I'm going to start referring now to a map, so it
13 might be a convenient time.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we're
15 still in difficulty, but let's adjourn anyway for a --

16 MR. GIBBS: I could continue,
17 if you prefer.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Oh, the
19 coffee is ready, well all right.

20
21 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Kosk imaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. GIBBS: Q Could Mr. Purcell be provided, please, with a copy of Exhibit 54? Location, design and capacity of facility section 8, and connecting pipeline facilities, section 9.

WITNESS PURCELL: I have one, sir.

Q Would you first of all turn to the map under tab 8-A, item 2, system map?

A Yes sir. The first map?

Q Yes, it's entitled: "Continental Delivery System, Arctic Gas Pipeline System."

A Yes sir.

Q It's the only -- it's the first map under that tab. Do you have that?

A I do.

Q I'm going to quote some numbers to you, Mr. Purcell, just to give you a little comfort they're numbers taken out of exactly the same volume. They are taken from tab 1 under Section 8-B, table 1, projected average gas, average day gas volumes.

A Yes sir, I see that.

Q I have taken the liberty of rounding them a little bit when I give them to you, I haven't always included the decimals. Now, sir, having in mind your principle of designing a system to provide transport gas at minimum unit cost, starting

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 at the north end you've already, I think, told me that
3 the two 48-inch lines coming together at Travaillant
4 Lake do not accomplish that principle of transporting
5 at minimum unit cost.

6 A Yes sir, that's stated
7 in the application.

8 Q They don't meet that
9 principle.

10 A Correct.

11 Q Then from Travaillant Lake
12 down to Caroline, you have a fifth year volume average
13 day volume of 4.488 billion cubic feet per day. I am
14 leaving out the fuel.

15 A That's correct.

16 Q And you're going to
17 carry that through a 48-inch .72 wall thickness pipe-
18 line.

19 A Yes sir.

20 Q And will that meet the
21 standard of providing minimum transportation costs for
22 that section of the pipeline?

23 A I believe it does.

24 Q And if you were going
25 to provide minimum unit cost of transportation for the
26 two northern supply legs, what size of pipeline would
27 you install there?

28 A The 42-inch pipe size that
29 is in the alternative application is a -- provides lower
30 unit cost of transporting gas.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs.

1
2 Q Now at Caroline, sir,
3 which I think is referred to as the Caroline bifurcation
4 point, at Caroline what you have in gas volumes is what
5 -- are the volumes that came in at Travaillant Lake,
6 less the fuel consumed in the transportation process.

7 A That is correct.

8 Q And that in the fifth
9 year is 4.264 billion cubic feet per day.

10 A Yes sir.

11 Q And at Caroline, sir,
12 that volume of 4.264 billion cubic feet per day is
13 split into two equal portions.

14 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
15 I think with respect, that my learned friend is getting
16 into an area that really pertains to the concern of the
17 National Energy Board, inasmuch as he's dealing with
18 matters outside of the Territories and in the Province
19 of Alberta.

20 MR. GIBBS: Well, sir here
21 this panel, Mr. Purcell has told me that they designed
22 the entire system from Prudhoe Bay to the 49th
23 Parallel, and that he did it to provide transportation
24 of gas at minimum ^{unit} cost. I think I'm entitled to
25 follow him down that system and determine how much of
26 it was designed on that basis and how much of the
27 design was imposed by his client.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, at the
29 moment I'm not prepared to stop you, Mr. Gibbs. But
30 that doesn't mean, Mr. Marshall, that you shouldn't

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 raise the objection again if you wish to. I don't think
3 we've really given Mr. Gibbs a chance to lay the
4 groundwork for whatever he's coming to, and it seems
5 to me it would stand to reason that we can't confine
6 him to the area north of the 60th Parallel at all
7 times. The considerations that he's concerned with
8 as they affect the north, depend to some extent on
9 what occurs south of the 60th Parallel. So carry on at
10 any rate for the time being, Mr. Gibbs.

11 MR. GIBBS: Thank you, sir.

12 Q Now that even split at
13 the Caroline bifurcation point, Mr. Purcell, was given
14 to you by the client, was it not?

15 A Yes sir.

16 Q And that even split is
17 intended to be carried south in one leg and south-east
18 in the other in a 42-inch outside diameter pipeline.

19 A That's correct.

20 Q And did you design that
21 42-inch outside diameter pipeline, or was it given to
22 you by the client?

23 A The size of it was
24 dictated by the client.

25 Q Then, sir, going in the
26 southerly direction, from Caroline, where the 42-inch
27 pipeline reaches the Alberta-British Columbia border at
28 Coleman, of the volumes then carried, one billion
29 cubic feet are taken out and into the Alberta Natural
30 Gas system, is it not?

A Yes sir.

1 Q But the 42 inch pipeline
2 continues across southeastern British Columbia, the
3 49th Parallel, carrying now only 1.126 billion cubic
4 feet a day in the fifth year?

5 A That's correct.

6 Q And did you design that
7 portion of 42 inch line from Coleman to Kingsgate,
8 or were you told to use that size by your client?

9 A That pipe size was
10 given to us by Canadian Arctic Gas.

11 Q Given -- if you were given
12 the task of designing that size pipe to carry 1.126
13 billion cubic feet per day for that distance from
14 Coleman to Kingsgate, at minimum unit cost, I take
15 it you would not have used 42 inch pipeline?

16 MR. MARSHALL: Well, Mr.
17 Commissioner, I think I must object to this line of
18 questioning once again. Mr. Gibbs will clearly have
19 an opportunity to pursue the area at a later date at
20 the National Energy Board, to deal with the instruct-
21 ions that were given by Arctic Gas with respect to
22 sizing, the various delivery lines and so on.

23 Now, I appreciate your concern
24 that he be allowed to lay the groundwork for questions,
25 Mr. Commissioner, but it's my respectful submission
26 that he's really getting into an area that does not
27 pertain to the subject matters that are before this
28 inquiry within the terms of the Order-in-Council.

29 MR. GIBBS: Well, sir, the --

30 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,

1 Mr. Gibbs. May I ask you a question? Earlier in
2 this hearing, you raised the likelihood of looping
3 of the trunk pipeline in the Northwest Territories.

4 MR. GIBBS:

Yes sir.

5 THE COMMISSIONER:

Now, if these questions
6 are designed to get at the likelihood of looping
7 north of the 60th Parallel, that would have a bearing
8 on the impact north of 60, and I'd be prepared to
9 let you continue.

10 I only mention that because I
11 must say as you have proceeded, I thought you were
12 getting at that. If you're getting at something else,
13 perhaps you might tell us now and we can consider
14 that.

15 MR. GIBBS: My friend has brought
16 this prestigious group of witnesses here to talk
17 about design and capacity, and in their own prepared
18 evidence, they say we designed the pipeline -- I
19 can read it to you just to refresh your mind, sir.
20 This is Mr. Purcell in his direct evidence. He says,

21 "I established three major
22 objectives for the design group".

23 And the third one is this:

24 "The third objective was that
25 the pipeline system should be an optimum
26 design so that it could be built and operated
27 to transport gas at the minimum unit cost",
28 and that system, of course, goes all the way from
29 Prudhoe Bay to the 49th Parallel as he has said.

30 And I want to show sir, that the

1 amount of that system that was designed by this panel
2 was restricted and was minimal, in fact restricted
3 to the amount of Travaillant Lake to Caroline,
4 and all the rest of it, sizing, was imposed by the
5 plant and not by this group, and if we get to that
6 point, then and my friend Mr. Marshall wants to pro-
7 duce his client to explain why that system was
8 imposed on this design group, then I'm prepared to talk
9 about it with him.

10 But in the meantime, I think I
11 am entitled, subject to your ruling, to establish that
12 this group didn't design the capacity of this pipeline
13 at all.

14 MR. MARSHALL: I think sir, what
15 Mr. Gibbs is doing with his last question as I
16 recollect it, was dealing with the portion from
17 Caroline beyond to Kingsgate and asking the witness
18 what he would have proposed himself with an objective
19 of optimization of the design. I think that's a
20 very different thing from what Mr. Gibbs has
21 indicated is his intent.

22 MR. GIBBS: Oh no, sir. He's
23 told me that the top two lines are 48 inch because
24 he was told to make them 48 inch.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: They don't
26 meet his criteria.

27 MR. GIBBS: His criteria would
28 be 42, he's told me that. Now I've got him down to
29 the point from Caroline to Kingsgate and he's told me
30 that the 42 is what he was told to do, and I want to

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Price, Reid, Rathje
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1 ask him what he thinks the appropriate size would be
2 to meet his criteria of minimum transportation, and
3 I propose to go over on the other side down to Mouncie
4 and do the same thing, if I'm permitted to continue.

5 MR. MARSHALL: Sir again it's
6 my respectful submission that that line of questioning
7 ought not to be pursued. The concern that this
8 inquiry relates to, the impact of the pipeline within
9 the Territories and the question of optimization of
10 design south of the 60th parallel, in my submission,
11 ought not to be dealt with by Mr. Gibbs and the
12 panel.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Carry on,
14 Mr. Gibbs.

15 MR. GIBBS:

16 Q Mr. Purcell, what size
17 line would you have installed between Coleman and
18 Kingsgate to carry the 1.126 billion cubic feet per
19 day?

20 WITNESS PURCELL:

21 A For the gas volumes shown
22 in the application, I suspect that a 36 inch pipeline
23 would provide lower transportation cost than the 42
24 inch.

25 Q Yes, sir. Then coming
26 southeast from Caroline to Mouncie, Saskatchewan,
27 you have another 42 inch pipeline?

28 A That's correct.

29 Q Which at the fifth year
30 volumes would meet your test of transportation of gas

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1 at minimum unit cost?

2 A Yes, it does.

3 Q Given the volumes that
4 the client gave to you?

5 A That's correct.

6 Q And for that leg, did you
7 design the 42 inch to fit the volumes, or were you
8 given the volumes and the pipe size by the client?

9 A We were given the volumes
10 and the pipe size and as the application states, we
11 located compressor stations so that the optimum
12 volume could be achieved in that section of the pipe-
13 line. The optimum volume, I think the application
14 says is 2.7 billion cubic feet. It's slightly higher
15 than the 2.1. billion that is being carried.

16 Q Well, Mr. Purcell, then
17 can we conclude this portion by saying that the
18 design --insofar as the design is capacity, the
19 system from Prudhoe Bay to the 49th parallel was
20 given to you by your client? You were told the pipe
21 sizes to use from end to end?

22 A We were told the pipe
23 sizes to use from end to end, yes.

24 Q Then sir, if you're going
25 to optimize or provide the minimum unit cost for
26 the transportation of gas through the two northern
27 supply lines, one from Prudhoe Bay and one from
28 Richards Island, you're going to end up carrying
29 through each of those supply lines, approximately
30 four and a half billion cubic feet per day, are you

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1 not?

2 A Each of the supply lines
3 has that capacity.

4 Q And operated at that
5 capacity would provide the minimum unit cost of trans-
6 portation?

7 A Thats correct.

8 Q And when that point is
9 reached, if ever, are you not then forced to loop the
10 section south of Travaillant Lake?

11 A Yes, sir.

12 Q Yes. And do you have any
13 advice to offer the inquiry on when that might occur?

14 A We have received no
15 instructions to proceed with plans for looping the
16 pipeline south of Travaillant Lake junction, or for
17 that matter, for any of the segments of the pipeline
18 system.

19 Q Have you done any indepen-
20 dent design work towards a looping program, regard-
21 less of whether you have client's instructions or
22 not?

23 A We have in some cost
24 studies we have made, considered the effect of going
25 beyond the gas volumes shown in the book. For
26 example, at one point we looked at the economics of
27 a 42 inch alternative to the main line south of
28 Travaillant Lake Junction, and to reach the same gas
29 volumes it was necessary to loop that 42 inch line.

30 So some of our studies have

1 included it, but they have not been serious alter-
2 natives proposed by Canadian Arctic Gas.

3 Q In your contacts with
4 the producers in determining gas composition, did
5 you give any -- pay any attention to the deliverability
6 from Prudhoe Bay and from the Beaufort Basin?

7 A The ability of the fields
8 to produce the gas?

9 Q Yes?

10 A No sir, that was outside
11 the scope of Northern Engineering's work. That was
12 handled directly by Canadian Arctic Gas.

13 Q You are not then able to
14 tell the Commissioner whether there is projected a
15 daily deliverability greater than the two and a
16 quarter billion cubic feet per day through the Prud-
17 hoe Bay and Richards Island supply line?

18 A I can't speak to that,
19 Mr. Gibbs. I think there is a volume that has been
20 submitted that does cover that subject.

21 Q And have you examined
22 that volume?

23 A I've glanced at it, that's
24 all. I haven't read it carefully and I certainly
25 can't support it.
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q Mr. Purcell, have you
3 assumed or were you told by your client that the two
4 decimal one one two billion cubic feet per day going
5 south-east from Caroline to Mouncie would all go to
6 the 49th Parallel?

7 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
8 I think here again we're getting into a question of
9 the subject that is within the jurisdiction of the
10 National Energy Board, and really has no bearing on
11 this Inquiry.

12 MR. GIBBS: Well, sir, there
13 is something in excess of 100 miles of pipeline in Sask-
14 atchewan that sure isn't going to be needed if the gas
15 goes into Trans-Canada Pipeline, and I was about to
16 ask him about his sizing of that section.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
18 the -- this is the continental delivery system may?

19 MR. GIBBS: Yes sir.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, if
21 it is designed to get at the question of looping--
22 is it not?

23 MR. GIBBS: No, it was getting
24 back again to how much of this pipeline, what kind of
25 a design he would put from Empress, Alberta, to
26 Mouncie, Saskatchewan, if he were designing it on the
27 assumption that some portion of ^{that} gas went into the
28 Trans-Canada Pipeline. But I don't need to pursue it,
29 he's already agreed with me that the client told him
30 what size of pipe to use.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q Mr. Purcell, can we now
3 turn to the gas composition portion of Exhibit 54, which
4 is, I think, under tab 2, it's under tab 8-B, pink tab 2
5 form and assumptions page 12.

6 A I have it here, yes sir.

7 Q I take it, sir, that
8 there is no way of saying at this point in time that
9 the Prudhoe Bay and Richards Island gas streams will
10 be of the composition there shown.

11 A They are the best estimate
12 that can be made at this time of the composition.

13 Q But in each case, Mr.
14 Purcell, does it not depend upon designing a processing
15 plant?

16 A I'm not an expert in
17 these things, Mr. Gibbs. I think the primary variable
18 would be the reservoir fluid composition. I think the
19 characteristics of a gas plant are fairly well known
20 by the gas producers.

21 Q Yes sir, but you and I
22 have been involved in the industry long enough to know
23 that first of all the gas plant has got to be designed.

24 A Yes sir.

25 Q And then it has to be
26 approved by some regulatory authority.

27 A I'm not -- I don't know
28 that that's true. I'll take your word for that.

29 Q And then it has to be
30 built.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1

2

A Yes.

3

Q And in its design you can

4

vary the -- I think it's called the cut -- to determine

5

how much of the gas composition will be liquids at

6

atmospheric pressure.

7

A You can operate a given

8

gas plant at slightly different temperatures to achieve

9

a different gas composition.

10

Q Yes, so then the Prudhoe

11

Bay gas stream, its ultimate composition will depend

12

upon the configuration of the plant that's built there,

13

and the conditions, if any, imposed upon its construc-

14

tion by regulatory authorities in Alaska, and the

15

operating temperatures and operating procedures.

16

A Yes sir.

17

MR. MARSHALL: Well, Mr. Commis-

18

sioner, this is clearly an area where the witness doesn't

19

have personal knowledge. Mr. Gibbs is suggesting

20

various regulatory authorities, unidentified, and he's

21

not been specific on this point. The witness has

22

indicated that he's not an expert in the subject.

23

MR. GIBBS: The panel is

24

supposed to be able to talk about this portion of

25

Exhibit 54, design and capacity.

26

THE COMMISSIONER: The witness

27

agreed with you. If it turns out he's not equipped

28

to offer an answer, I'm certain that he'll say so.

29

MR. GIBBS: Q Now, Mr. Purcell,

30

what I call the liquids content which -- by which I mean

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 the liquids which will become liquid at atmospheric
3 pressure, is considerably higher in the Prudhoe Bay gas
4 than it is in the Richards Island gas, is it not?

5 A Would you repeat the
6 question? What is higher?

7 Q The liquid content.
8 Perhaps, Mr. Purcell, we could go it this way. Am I
9 correct in saying that the gas components which will
10 become liquid at atmospheric pressure are the pentanes
11 and the hexanes?

12 A And heavier, yes.

13 Q And that that liquid
14 volume in Prudhoe Bay is about 22% higher than it is
15 in Richards Island.

16 A According to my calculations it's, in the case of Prudhoe Bay, .22 mole percent,
17 and in the case of Richards Island, .18 mole percent.

18 Q And the difference is
19 about 22%.

20
21 THE COMMISSIONER: An earlier
22 witness, Mr. Purcell, an earlier witness, Mr. Bailey,
23 said that the Mackenzie Delta gas was, I think he
24 called it, clean gas, and he said the Prudhoe Bay
25 gas was -- and I think once again he said -- sour
26 gas. Do those terms mean anything to you?

27 A I think he said the
28 Richards Island gas was lean, L-E-A-N.

29 Q All right, lean and
30 sour.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 A No sir, neither of these
3 gases is a sour gas ..

4 Q Well, all right, lean
5 describes the gas in the Mackenzie Delta certainly,
6 Richards Island. Would there be any expression
7 approximating the phrase "sour gas" that would apply
8 to the Prudhoe Bay gas?

9 A Both these gases would
10 be called sweet as opposed to sour. The Prudhoe Bay
11 gas would be called rich as opposed to lean. It's
12 primarily the components of ethane and propane and butane
13 that contribute to the extra heating value of the Pru-
14 dhoe Bay gas.

15 Q And Mr. Purcell, the
16 reason why this is not sour gas is that fortunately
17 there's no sulphur in it.

18 A Yes sir, very little at
19 any rate.

20 Q Well, I'm sorry to
21 interrupt you, Mr. Gibbs, but just so I understand this,
22 I wish I had Mr. Bailey's evidence before me, but
23 I got the impression -- maybe I shouldn't have -- that
24 the Richards Island gas would not require to be processed
25 to the same extent as the Prudhoe Bay gas to make it
26 acceptable to the ^{trunk} pipeline. Is that -- does that make
27 any sense to you, or have I simply misunderstood?

28 A I think they plan to
29 process it. I think you may be right in that they will
30 have fewer liquids to dispose of that cannot be carried

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 by the gas pipeline. In the case of the Prudhoe
3 Bay producers, those liquids that they can't use in
4 the gas pipeline and they can't use for fuel, I under-
5 stand they are able to accommodate in their oil pipe-
6 line.

7
8 MR.GIBBS: Q Mr. Purcell, the
9 higher liquid content in the Prudhoe Bay gas is of
10 significance, is it not, if the pipeline goes through
11 a decompression phase, if the pressure drops in the
12 pipeline?

13 A The composition of the
14 gas affects the way it decompresses.

15 Q Yes sir and if it decom-
16 presses down to atmospheric pressure, the liquids
17 drop out of the gaseous stage and become liquid in the
18 lower portions of the pipeline.

19 A I suspect there would
20 be some liquid in the pipeline if it was completely
21 decompressed.

22 Q Well, sir, I am advised
23 that if a fracture occurred in that Prudhoe Bay section,
24 the section west of Travaillant Lake, and there was
25 a rapid decompression as a result, you could get in
26 the 45 or 55 -- 50 miles between compressor stations,
27 a dropout of as much as 1,000 barrels of liquid. Do
28 you agree or disagree?

29 A I have no information to
30 agree or disagree.

Q Does anyone on the panel

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Know anything about that?

3 WITNESS KING: I would
4 suggest that many of these liquids, the pentanes and
5 hexanes that you talk about, would evaporate along with
6 the methane. There's a family similarity between these
7 substances and in a mixture of natural gases, the
8 methane enables the pentane and hexanes to evaporate.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q But whether or not they
2 evaporate or become liquids in the lower parts of
3 the pipelines, depends, does it not, on the rate of
4 decompression and the temperature and other factors
5 of that sort?

6 A In our studies of the
7 phase envelopes of these gases, at atmospheric
8 conditions ^{there are no} / liquids at atmospheric pressures
9 and atmospheric temperatures; there are no liquids
10 which remain after decompression.

11 Q Would you repeat that?

12 A Maybe some explanation
13 might help. If you have pure hexane, it will be a
14 liquid at atmospheric conditions. If you have a
15 mixture of methane and hexane, the mixture will be
16 a gas at atmospheric conditions.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: I see.

18 A For example, water is
19 normally a liquid at atmospheric conditions, and
20 yet in this room we have many gallons of water
21 entrained as a gas in atmosphere, and yet we have
22 no free liquid.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Mr.
24 Gibbs' suggestion to you then, Is I take it that at
25 atmospheric pressure the pentanes and hexanes will
26 liquefy and ^{that} a rupture in the Prudhoe Bay leg of
27 this pipeline would drop out of the pipeline in the
28 form of liquids?

29 If they did, what would their
30 properties be? Is it just like a thousand barrels of

1 water or is it toxic? What is this likely to result
2 in, if it did occur, and I appreciate that you deny
3 the suggestion made by Mr. Gibbs that it would be
4 likely to occur.

5 A They would have an appear-
6 ance of a very light oil, extremely light oil.

7 Q With the same properties?

8 A Similar properties, yes.

9 The other thing that I would
10 like to point out is that the two gases in question
11 have very similar characteristics, very similar
12 quantities of the heavier components. For instance,
13 -- in fact, the Richards Island Gas is slightly
14 richer in hexanes and heptanes. It's very hard to
15 distinguish between these two gases in heavy compon-
16 ents.

17 MR. GIBBS:

18 Q Well sir, is it your evi-
19 dence that there will not be a liquid drop-out if
20 there is decompression in any portion of that
21 pipeline?

22 A There could be small
23 amounts of liquid drop-out, but certainly not the
24 quantities which you talk about. Much of it would
25 be carried into the atmosphere by the methane gas.

26 Q And what quantities do
27 you suggest might drop out in the 50 mile section
28 between compressor stations?

29 A I was suggesting that
30 there would be none at all, sir.

1 Q There would be none at all?

2 A No, sir.

3 Q Under any decompression
4 circumstances there would be no liquid drop-out?

5 A At extremely low temperatures
6 there may be some liquids remainingⁱⁿ/the pipeline, sir.

7 Q And by that do you mean
8 in the permafrost areas?

9 A The temperatures which may
10 occur after decompression. The liquids will contain
11 a large amount of methane, and I would expect them to
12 evaporate when the pipeline returns to the atmospheric
13 temperature and atmospheric pressures, that all the
14 liquids would evaporate.

15 Q Atmospheric pressure mean-
16 ing the -- what do they call it, the ambient pressure?

17 A Yes, 14.7 pounds per square
18 inch.

19 Q I'm sorry, temperature?

20 A Say around -30 or 40 degrees.

21 Q And that's your evidence,
22 that we needn't concern ourselves with liquid drop-out
23 if there is a decompression in any of those sections?

24 A That's correct, sir.

25 Q All right. Now sir, on
26 the same page there is a comparison of heating values.
27 Do you see that, Mr. Purcell?

28 WITNESS PURCELL:

29 A Yes, sir.

30 Q And the heating value of the

1 Prudhoe Bay gas is approximately 10 percent greater
2 than the Richards Island gas?

3 A That's correct.

4 Q And that's partly what's
5 meant by saying that the Prudhoe Bay gas is richer?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q And do you incorporate any-
8 thing in your design to enable calculation of the
9 precise difference in heating value for compensation
10 purposes?

11 A In terms of delivering the
12 gas at the end of the pipeline?

13 Q Yes.

14 MR. MARSHALL: WELL, Mr.
15 Commissioner, I think this gets into an area of
16 establishing the tariffs and so on, and again it's
17 an area that would involve others in the Arctic Gas
18 organization, and perhaps another forum.

19 MR. GIBBS: Well sir, the query
20 that when the gas is mixed, the Canadian gas ends up
21 about five percent richer than when it was not mixed,
22 and clearly if you are going to buy and sell on a BTU
23 basis you're going to have to pay for it, because
24 you're getting a better cubic foot of gas. And I
25 am merely asking whether he put anything into his
26 design to measure that at the delivery point, so you
27 can determine the heating values there.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: I think that
29 Mr. Marshall's objection was not on the grounds of
30 relevancy, but simply of the ground that these

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 witnesses weren't qualified to deal with the issue.

2 MR. MARSHALL: Strictly from a
3 design point of view as to whether such -- something
4 has been incorporated within the design, the witnesses
5 can answer that, sir. Going beyond that point, though,
6 I think I would have to raise an objection again.

7
8 THE COMMISSIONER: Well I think
9 that you are entitled to carry on, Mr. Gibbs. As far
10 as the knowledge of these witnesses will allow, and
11 --

12 MR. GIBBS: Well that was my
13 sole question, is whether he incorporated anything
14 into the design so that these can be measured and
15 appropriate compensation determined.

16 A Our measurement stations
17 provide facilities to measure the heating value of
18 the gas, so that adjustments of that nature could be
19 made.

20 Q And are these measurements
21 done at each compressor, or at specified points on the
22 line?

23 A They're I think described
24 in the application. There would be two -- there
25 would be a measurement station at each point the
26 pipeline receives gas.

27 Q Okay.

28 A There would be another
29 one near the Alberta/Yukon border, because you're
30 transferring gas from one company to another.

1 Q Alberta/B.C. border.

2 A I'm sorry, the Alaska
3 and Yukon border. And there would be a measurement
4 station at each point of gas delivery. We don't
5 contemplate a full measurement station at each
6 compressor station.

7 Q Thank you. Would you turn
8 now back to your prepared evidence again, sir, and
9 particularly to page 5. And I direct your attention
10 to the second last sentence which is the second of
11 your major objectives. You began that paragraph by
12 saying,

13 "I established three major
14 objectives for ^{the} design group,"

15
16 and the second was that present day technology should
17 be used.

18 "We were not to consider
19 in the design, future technological advances
20 which might take place".

21 And am I right, sir, in assuming
22 that you would adhere to that objective throughout
23 the whole of your design?

24 A I believe we have.

25 Q And you're satisfied as
26 you sit there, that only present day technology has
27 been used in your design?

28 A Yes, sir.

29 Q Would you define for me,
30 sir, your understanding of the words "present day

1 technology"?

2 A It refers to materials
3 that for example could be purchased today. Purchase
4 orders could be placed for the equipment that is
5 proposed today. And pipe mills or other manufacturing
6 facilities could produce these components.

7 Q Technology then in your
8 concept refers to the ingredients of the equipment?

9 A The ingredients and the
10 manufacturing processes and so forth.

11 Q Does it have any geographic
12 connotation?

13 A I don't understand.

14 Q Well if you read in a
15 Russian magazine that they were using some technique
16 in Russia that had not been used here, would you call
17 that present day technology?

18 A Yes, I think I would.

19 Q Even though you might not
20 have access to it?

21 A We would not incorporate it
22 in the designs if we were not familiar with it, and
23 would not have access to it.

24 Q And I take it that in your
25 design work you have not incorporated anything that
26 you have not had access to?

27 A Not to my knowledge.

28 Q All right, sir. Now, I
29 am about to suggest to you some features that to me
30 at least don't seem to be in accordance with your

1 present day technology test. Is there anywhere,
2 sir, in North America to start with, where 48 inch
3 outside diameter pipe is being used to transport
4 natural gas?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1

2

A I think not,

3

Mr. Gibbs.

4

Q Is there anywhere in

5

North America, sir, where pipe with a wall thickness of
.720 inches is being used to transport natural gas?

6

7

A Not as a mainline. Such

8

pipe would exist today in compressor stations.

9

Q Is there anywhere in

10

North American where a natural gas pipeline is operating
at a pressure of 1,680 pounds per square inch gauge?

11

12

A I think again not for

13

a natural gas transmission pipeline, but such facilities
do exist at gas processing plants. Pressures much
higher than that are common.

14

15

16

Q Then wouldn't you agree

17

with me then, sir, that those three items at least
are not present-day technology?

18

19

A No sir, I would not.

20

Q All right. Then I ask

21

you to consider the combination of four items, 48-inch
outside diameter, grade 70, .720 inch wall thickness,
at 1,680 pounds per square inch gauge and ask you if
that package is not new technology?

22

23

24

25

A There is not a pipeline

26

today that has those characteristics, that's why we've
spent five years studying the project to be sure that
it's a good design.

27

28

29

Q And doesn't present-day

30

technology also have incorporated in it an experience

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 factor?

3 A Yes.

4 Q And there is no experience
5 with that combination in North America, or even in the
6 world, is there?

7 A There again, there is to
8 my knowledge no pipeline of this size in the world.

9 Q Or of that package
10 combination of diameter, thickness, grade and pressure.

11 A That's correct.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Is that the
13 grade of steel?

14 A Yes sir.

15 MR. GIBBS: Q So that your,
16 if I can call it, a package again, is not present-day
17 technology, is it?

18 A The intent of that state-
19 ment, Mr. Gibbs, was that when we came before Mr.
20 Berger or if we can before the National Energy Board
21 we would be able to demonstrate that we could get pipe
22 of this size and we would be able to demonstrate that
23 we anticipated any problems that could arise because
24 of the scale of this project. That's what I meant
25 when I wrote that down.

26 Q You didn't --

27 A I didn't mean that we
28 had to follow something that had already been built.
29 There is no precedent for a pipeline of this length
30 in permafrost to start with, it wouldn't have been

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

possible.

Q Oh yes, but we're not talking about length in permafrost now, we're talking about wall thickness, diameter, and operating pressure and grade. You, I take it, didn't mean in your words, "present-day technology" that it wasn't something new.

A No, I agree with you that this is a new combination of factors for a pipeline.

Q And a new combination of factors for a pipeline anywhere in the world.

A Yes sir.

Q Now sir, can you turn to page 23 of your prepared evidence. You talk about your fracture arresting techniques. On page 22 at the bottom you said that:

"The fracture arrest behaviour of the proposed mainline pipe at the designed temperature and pressure cannot be consistently predicted by the Battelle hypothesis."

A I did.

Q And then on the top of page 23, you say:

"Therefore our design is based on adding mechanical reinforcing bands or similar devices at suitable spacings along the pipeline to assure control over the length of a possible fracture. Three separate tests were made to show that reinforcing bands can be used in the remote event of a fracture, to control the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

length of the fracture."

Firstly, sir, will you describe for the Commissioner the size and shape and configuration and composition of the arresting band or reinforcing bands you talk about?

A We have several alternatives available to us.

Q But before you describe all those alternatives, have you made a choice that you're going to use in this pipe?

A We know of one design -- the one that has been tested -- that we would be able to use if we had to start today. The program, I think, is to optimize that design and perhaps improve upon it.

Q The word "optimize", Mr. Purcell, when you use that you mean more efficient?

A More efficient in the sense, yes, of working better and perhaps being more economical.

Q Will you then describe the one that you would use were you building the pipeline today?

A The reinforcing band that we've tested was made of a piece of 48-inch pipe just the same as the line pipe. It was split in half, it was put on top of the pipe, the ends didn't join, obviously, so straps were welded over the gaps in these two halves.

Q How long is the band?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 A I believe the ones that
3 have been tested were four feet long.

4 Q And is that the length
5 you will be using, were you building the pipeline
6 today?

7 A That, I think so, yes.

8 Q And they are three-quarters
9 of an inch thick? Or 0.72 inches thick?

10 A That's correct.

11 Q And under operating
12 conditions how would you install them, by the welded
13 band you've described, or would they be shrunk over the
14 pipe, or how would you put them on?

15 A My view is that they would
16 be installed in a shop, they would not be installed in
17 the field. I believe that they would be installed at
18 a location where we were perhaps double-jointing the
19 pipe.

20 Q And would they then be
21 sort of heat-shrunk onto the pipeline, or welded on, or
22 how do you fasten to the pipe?

23 A They would probably be
24 fastened to the pipeline by friction. They would be
25 strapped down tight over the pipe and welded to them-
26 selves.

27 Q And would I be in the
28 right range to suggest that if you use those 4-foot
29 lengths, that each one of those will weigh approxi-
30 mately one ton?

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-exam by Gibbs

1
2 A I think so, yes. No,
3 they wouldn't either, they would weigh 1,000 pounds,
4 I believe.

5 Q Half a ton?

6 A Yes.

7 Q And in what areas of the
8 pipeline system from Prudhoe Bay to the 60th Parallel
9 would you intend to install the arresting bands?

10 A I think if we had to
11 build the pipeline today we would install them on the
12 entire pipeline.

13 Q And at what frequency,
14 what distance between each band?

15 A That hasn't been deter-
16 mined, Mr. Gibbs. My guess would be it would be some-
17 thing like a 300-foot spacing.

18 Q That must add substantially
19 to the capital cost of your pipeline, doesn't it?

20 A No sir, it's very
21 insignificant.

22 Q It is?

23 A Yes.

24 Q All right. Now sir, the
25 purpose of those bands is to stop fractures which run
26 lengthwise in the pipe.

27 A To be absolutely sure that
28 they stop, yes.

29 Q And have those arresting
30 bands been used in any existing pipeline system in

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 North America?

3 A No sir, I think we're just
4 today reaching the point in pipeline design that it's
5 becoming apparent that they're necessary.

6 Q But we can at this point
7 in time say that there's no experience in the use of
8 those bands, under operating conditions to arrest
9 factors.

10 A I didn't hear the last
11 part, Mr. Gibbs.

12 Q That there is no exper-
13 ience in the use of those bands under operating condi-
14 tions to arrest these longitudinal fractures.

15 A For an operating
16 pipeline, no. There have only been the full-scale
17 tests that we conducted.

18 Q Now, where were your three
19 separate tests conducted, Mr. Purcell?

20 A They were conducted at
21 Battelle's facilities in Athens, Ohio.

22 Q And when were they
23 conducted?

24 WITNESS HOLMBERG: These tests
25 have been conducted over approximately the last year
26 or 18 months.

27 Q That's the three that
28 are referred to in the prepared evidence?

29 A Yes.
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg,
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q On three separate occasions
3 over the last approximately 18 months or so.

4 A Yes.

5 Q And were they conducted
6 under the supervision of Arctic Gas, or the Battelle
7 Institute, or a combination of both?

8 A Combination of both.

9 Q And in the case of each
10 test, were they conducted under simulated operating
11 conditions?

12 A Simulated pressures, yes.
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Simulated inside pressures?

2 A Simulated high pressures,
3 yes.

4 Q But not simulated outside
5 pressures, not buried in frozen ground, for example?

6 A The pipe was buried, but
7 not in frozen ground. The last test was made in
8 frozen -- at low temperatures at which the ground was
9 partially frozen.

10 Q Was the fracture initiated
11 in the same way in each case?

12 A Initiated?

13 a Yes?

14 A Yes.

15 Q How?

16 A This was initiated by
17 cutting a notch of a predetermined size in the pipe,
18 and then by an explosive, the small section at the
19 root of the notch was overstressed, causing the pipes
20 to rupture.

21 Q Well, meaning it cracked?

22 A That's right.

23 Q In each case was the same
24 length of test section used?

25 A essentially the same
26 lengths. There was some variations due to variations
27 in pipe lengths.

28 Q Yes, sir. But in each
29 case it was roughly 800 feet?

30 A I believe that's correct.

1 Q And in each case was the
2 same pipe specs -- pipe of the same specifications
3 used as is going to be used, as you propose to use in
4 the Arctic Gas system?

5 A The tests were made using
6 several different combinations of pipe available
7 from different mills to obtain information on the
8 effectiveness of the arrestors and also obtain other
9 information on fracture speeds, fracture propagation
10 characteristics of these different pipes. But they
11 were all made on pipe of types that are being cons-
12 idered for use in the project.

13 Q Well they were all 48
14 inch, decimal 720 grade 7B --

15 A Yes.

16 Q -- and all of that
17 character?

18 A Yes.

19 Q What was used to build up
20 the pressure inside.

21 A Gas, natural gas.

22 Q And was it gas of the
23 composition which we discussed earlier for the Prudhoe
24 Bay and the Richards Island stream?

25 A Several different gas
26 compositions were used in the tests, including gas
27 compositions comparable to those that will be
28 obtained from Prudhoe Bay.

29 Q And how far apart were
30 the arresting bands on each of the three test cases?

1 A The -- this test is made
2 by initiating a fracture, the fracture propagates in
3 opposite directions, and --

4 Q In both directions at once?

5 A That's right.

6 And I have the information
7 available, but I have to go from memory, but I believe
8 the fractures propagated in opposite directions
9 approximately 40 to 50 feet before they reach the
10 band.

11 Q Do I take it then, sir,
12 that in each case the arresting bands were in excess
13 of 100 feet apart?

14 A Yes.

15 Q And in each case
16 did the fractures run right to the bands?

17 A No, they did not in all
18 tests.

19 However, there have been three
20 instances where the arrestors did stop propagating
21 cracks.

22 Q But in these three tests,
23 Dr. Holmberg --

24 A It's Mr.

25 Q -- Mr. Holmberg, isn't it
26 so that in only one case the fracture reached the
27 arresting band?

28 A I don't believe that's
29 correct. I'd have to review my notes and the data
30 on the test.

1 Q And are those handy to you
2 at this point?

3 A It will take me a little
4 time to locate that information. I have it here, but
5 --

6 Q How much is a little time?

7 A Possibly five or 10 minutes.

8 Q Well sir, perhaps I can
9 go on to some other questions while you do it. I do
10 want to deal with these during the course of this
11 interchange.

12 A I'm sorry, I -- did you
13 address something to me? I didn't hear.

14 Q I was sort of addressing
15 it to the Commissioner and to you.

16 THE COMMISSIONER: Is it
17 possible for you to find that reference to the tests
18 now, over the next 5, 10, 15 minutes?

19 A I'll see if I can.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Well you do
21 that sir, and Mr. Gibbs will ask questions of your
22 colleagues and we will just carry right on.

23 MR. GIBBS:

24 Q Mr. Purcell, will you
25 turn to your prepared evidence at page 23, and I am
26 interested in the question in the middle of the page.
27 Have you satisfied yourself that steels suitable for
28 this pipeline are commercially available? To which
29 you answered "yes".
30

1 WITNESS PURCELL:

2 A That's correct.

3 Q Can you define for me,
4 your understanding of the word "commercially"?

5 A Well by that I mean it's
6 available in the quantities that we require and at a
7 price that we can afford.

8 Q At this time?

9 A Yes, sir.

10 Q Given a reasonable lead
11 time of --

12 A Given time to place orders
13 and time for the steel mill to get ready.

14 Q Five or six months?

15 A I think a year might be
16 more appropriate.

17 Q And when they talk about
18 steel suitable for this pipeline, that is plate 40
19 feet long and twelve and a half feet wide and decimal
20 720 inches thick, and the chemical composition that
21 you require?

22 A Yes.

23 Q Where is it available
24 commercially, sir?

25 A The pipe can be made in
26 Canada, it can be made by one pipe mill in Canada,
27 48 inch pipe. It can be made by four pipe mills in
28 Japan, one pipe mill in Germany, and one pipe mill
29 in Italy.

30 Q And in each of those cases

1 you could obtain that pipe commercially and you expect
2 about a one year/time on order?
lead

3 A Yes.

4 Q And you referred to one
5 pipe mill in Canada, and that's Stelco?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 THE COMMISSONER: Sorry, what
8 was that?

9 A Stelco, the Steel Company
10 of Canada.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Stelco.

12 MR. GIBBS:

13 Q I understand sir, that in
14 terms of reliability is somewhat less reliable than
15 the pipe which is made offshore in Japan or Germany
16 or Italy?

17 A I don't understand that.

18 Q Well sir, I asked for
19 -- when I saw that question -- some education on the
20 availability of this kind of pipe, and I am just
21 going to read you a little bit of information that
22 was passed to me for my education, and ask you if
23 you agree with it.

24 MR. MARSHALL: Is this a report
25 that you're referring to? I wonder if you could
26 -- or is this some instructions from your client?

27 MR. GIBBS: No, I'm just going
28 to read him what I'm told and see if he agrees or
29 disagrees.

30 And this is a purported grading

1 of pipe manufacturers with future capability in sort
2 of order of priority, and I'm told that in the first
3 order, Mannesman, Nippon Steel and Sumitomo, and those
4 are one German and two Japanese outfits.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
6 Mr. Gibbs, can I ask you, does this relate to the
7 quality of the pipe produced in these mills, or does
8 it relate to their reliability so far as their
9 capacity to deliver on schedule is concerned, or what?

10 MR. GIBBS: No, not delivery, the
11 actual making of the steel and the rolling it into
12 pipe.

13 And number 1 it says mannesman,
14 Nippon Steel and Sumitomo were all judged equally
15 capable of presently supplying controlled rolled
16 line pipe meeting our specification requirements,
17 and that would still be the case would it?

18 A That would be true in my
19 opinion.

20 Q In your opinion. The
21 second one says Italside, I-t-a-l-s-i-d-e-r, and
22 that's Italian, I take it?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q Has indicated the capability
25 of producing line pipe to the requirements of our
26 specification, however the lack of experience this
27 company has in the production of high toughness line
28 pipe and the limited amount of production data avail-
29 able, results in them being judged fourth best in
30 production capability. Would you agree with that?

1 A I would like to ask Mr.
2 Holmberg. I think he's more familiar with the various
3 pipe mills than I am.

4 MR. GIBBS: I am sorry.
5 I didn't want to interrupt him in his search.

6 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
7 Mr. Holmberg I think is interested in these subject
8 areas, and he's unable to search through his material
9 to find the data that had been requested by Mr. Gibbs.

10 Further, with respect to this
11 line of questioning being pursued by Mr. Gibbs, I
12 might ask whether he is giving evidence or he is
13 quoting from a report or what. It seems to me fair
14 to have him identify what it is he is reading from at
15 some length.

16 THE COMMISSIONER: He's entitled
17 to say, my instructions are that these companies
18 should be rated on this basis, one, two, three, four.

19 Now, he really isn't obliged
20 to go any further than that.

21 MR. MARSHALL: That's fine, if
22 we are dealing with his instructions, sir. I quite
23 agree.

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

MR. GIBBS:

Q I wonder, sir, if Dr.

Holmberg has got any further in getting to his test material? I don't want to interrupt him but I have two lines of questions now that are waiting.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
needed
think Mr. Holmberg, if you are / on this current line of questioning, you might as well give up the search for the test data for the moment. I think to be fair to Mr. Purcell that should be done.

Yes, Mr. Scott?

MR. SCOTT: Would it help to take five minutes, and Mr. Gibbs has now got onto two lines of questioning, both of which seem to require the same witness.

THE COMMISSIONER: Dual lines of questioning.

MR. SCOTT: Dual lines.
Twin lines.

THE COMMISSIONER: We'll take a five minute break then, and you can do what you can.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FIVE MINUTES)

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner, I believe Mr. Holmberg has found the data pertaining to two of the tests. If that would be of assistance to Mr. Gibbs we could have it now; if he'd rather wait until he's got the information on all three tests, I'm afraid we'll have to wait till tomorrow.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 or allow Mr. Holmberg a few more minutes to do some
3 more work.

4 MR. GIBBS: I prefer to have it
5 tomorrow, sir, if it's going to take that, and continue
6 with the line I'm on now.

7 Q Then, Mr. Purcell, the
8 report I have goes on to say that

9 "N.K.K."
10 that's a Japanese firm, is it not?

11 A Yes sir.

12 Q
13 "-- was judged least capable of the mills in
14 this grouping and they took exception to
15 several major areas of the specifications."
16 Would you agree ~~that~~ that is still the case?

17 A What's the date of your
18 report, Mr. Gibbs?

19 Q April of 1973, sir.

20 A Again I'd like to defer
21 to Mr. Holmberg.

22 WITNESS HOLMBERG: I'm not
23 sure exactly what your question is, I'm sorry.

24 Q Well, I had told, while
25 you were searching there, that Mr. Purcell that I asked
26 and
27 for/had a report listing in order, not priorities,
28 suitability of the available pipe manufacturers of
29 the steel which Mr. Purcell said is commercially avail-
30 able, and that in order of -- for want of a better
word, priority, I suppose one might say reliability or

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 something of that nature they occurred, first
3 category was Mannesman, Nippon Steel and Sumitomo.

4 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner,
5 I hesitate to make a pest of myself on this point but
6 it seems to me that Mr. Gibbs is referring to a report
7 of April, 1973. If he's putting forward an expert's
8 opinion and he's asking the witnesses whether or not
9 they agree with it, it seems to me the expert being
10 quoted ought to be identified so that they'll know what
11 they are dealing with. On the other hand, if it
12 represents instructions he has from his client, I
13 quite agree that provided it's put forward on this
14 basis there is no objection to the line of questioning.
15 I would just like the point clarified by Mr. Gibbs.

16 MR. GIBBS: Well sir, in my
17 submission I am entitled to put to these witnesses
18 this category of preference. If they disagree they will
19 say so. If they agree they will say so.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
21 think that you are entitled to do that, Mr. Gibbs.
22 But you have gone beyond simply saying to the witness,
23 "I put it to you that in order of reliability these
24 firms ought to be rated No. 1, No. 2, and so on." You
25 have now said, "I have a report," and you're really
26 in a sense stacking that report up against the opinion
27 of Mr. Purcell and his colleague, Mr. Holmberg, and I
28 maybe in somewhat a different position now that you've
29 gone that far.

30 MR. GIBBS: Well, sir I didn't

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 think my friend would really want it marked as an
3 exhibit, and I'm quite prepared to tell him what it
4 is. It's the Minutes of the Sub-Committee, of the
5 Metallurgy Sub-Committee for April, 1973 of which
6 Dr. Holmberg at least was a member. Certainly those
7 are within his possession as well as within mine.

8 MR. SCOTT: Perhaps now that
9 it has been referred to it had better be marked as an
10 exhibit.

11 MR. GIBBS: What I have is
12 just an excerpt. I will get the full set of Minutes
13 and have them brought up, if that is your direction,
14 sir.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, subject
16 to any objection you may have, Mr. Marshall.

17 MR. MARSHALL: It's a document
18 that Mr. Gibbs has in his possession and wishes to put
19 in as an exhibit.

20 MR. GIBBS: No, I don't wish to
21 put it in. It was suggested by Mr. Scott that it go
22 in.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, Mr.
24 Scott suggested that it ought to be marked as an exhibit.
25 I agree, so that I am directing that Mr. Gibbs produce
26 a copy, and he says he will, and when he has produced
27 it, I will direct that it be marked. So as I say,
28 subject to any objection that you may have, since it's
29 a document originating, I take it, with your client,
30 or with Arctic Gas.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 MR. MARSHALL: We take no
3 position on that point, sir.

4 MR. BIBBS: It will take a day
5 or so to produce the entire set of Minutes, sir, but
6 I can -- assuming I have access to xerox facilities,
7 xerox the /excerpts I have and distribute them tomorrow, and then
8 later file the entire set of minutes.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

10 MR. GIBBS: Q Now, Mr. Holmberg,
11 would you agree that today that sort of rating order
12 would still put Mannesman, Nippon Steel, and Sumitomo
13 best
14 equally and probably /capable of supplying the pipe
15 to meet the specifications?

16 A They are still all capable,
17 I don't know as I would necessarily rate them in exactly
18 that same order.

19 Q And -- I'm sorry.

20 A I believe the Minutes of
21 the meeting that you're referring to is a Minute or
22 a meeting that was held, I believe, in Calgary, at
23 which time all of the steel companies in the world
24 that were prepared to furnish pipe or were considering
25 furnishing pipe for this project were invited to attend.
26 They had a series of meetings at which they reviewed the
27 specifications in detail, the areas where they had
28 problems complying with the specifications, and a mutual
29 exchange of trying to reconcile what they could do with
30 what we wanted, and I don't remember the exact rating or
that we actually put a specific rating on the mills.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 I don't question that it was done but I don't recall
3 that.

4 Q Well, sir, I'm reading
5 from these Minutes. Perhaps it would help, Mr. Holmberg,
6 if I read the opening paragraph under the heading,
7 "Pipe Manufacturers."

8 "Meetings were held with nine major pipe
9 manufacturers with either present or future
10 capabilities of supplying pipe for the project.
11 On the basis of the presentations made and data
12 presented, the metallurgy sub-committee determined
13 a relative ranking of the capabilities of these
14 manufacturers to produce pipe meeting the
15 requirements of the material specifications.
16 The companies are ranked in two groups, those
17 with existing mill facilities, and those with
18 mill facilities in the planning or construction
19 stage."

20 Then they rank them in order, and order No. 1 is Mannes-
21 man, Nippon Steel, and Sumitomo.

22 A This was on the basis
23 of present facilities, is that correct?

24 Q Yes sir, and would you
25 still rate them No. 1 on the basis of present facilities?

26 A I'm not sure that I would,
27 and I don't know that it makes a whole lot of difference.
28 The reason that I'm a little hesitant in saying that
29 I'd rate them this way is that during the past two years
30 the Japanese have made additions to their, both their

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 steel mills and their pipe mills, and have greater
3 capability than they had at that time. I'm not prepared
4 to say that I'd change the rating but I don't think this
5 rating is really very critical as far as the pipe
6 being available from those several mills.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Then let me read you from
2 these minutes, the comment on Italsider.

3 MR. MARSHALL: Well Mr.
4 Commissioner --

5 MR. GIBBS:

6 Q That's the right pronunciation,
7 is it?

8 A That's correct.

9 MR. MARSHALL: -- I think I must
10 register my views on this. Frankly, I can't see
11 where this is taking us in terms of relevancy. Per-
12 haps Mr. Gibbs can be helpful on that point and
13 demonstrate --

14 MR. GIBBS: Well sir, I began
15 with his own question, steels suitable for this
16 pipeline are commercially available. And in the --the
17 comment on Italsider says that they have indicated
18 the capability of producing the line pipe to the
19 requirements of our specifications, however the lack
20 of experience of this company in the production of
21 high toughness line sites and the limited amount of
22 production data available, resulted in Italsider
23 being judged fourth best in production capability.

24 Q Would you still adopt that
25 type of classification?

26 A I'm not sure that I
27 would as far as Italsider is concerned. Since then,
28 they've gained a large amount of additional experi-
29 ence. They are presently furnishing a large amount
30 of pipe to Russia, and some of the people that have

1 visited the mill have been very well impressed with
2 their capabilities.

3 Q All right, sir. Number
4 3 is NKK, which I understand to be a Japanese company?

5 A Yes.

6 Q And the minutes say,
7 "On the basis of the
8 presentation made to the subcommittee was
9 judged least capable of the mills in this
10 category".

11 Then the report goes on to refer to their objections
12 to the specifications, and then it says it is noted
13 that with the mill capabilities and previous experi-
14 ence of NKK, they would be expected to rate higher in
15 this evaluation, and that their response on this
16 occasion may have been part of the strategy of the
17 Japanese consortium to determine their technical
18 position with respect to other world bidders.

19 Now, would you still rate NKK
20 as least capable of the mills in this category of
21 those with present facilities?

22 A I don't know that I would
23 change it. I would like to say, however, that follow-
24 ing that meeting at which NKK gave very incomplete
25 information, they conducted a large amount of testing,
26 submitted a large amount of additional information
27 that indicated that they were capable of providing
28 pipe to meet the specifications.

29 Q Then under the heading
30 "Potential Future Suppliers", number one is Hoesch,

1 H-o-e-s-c-h, German. I take it?

2 A Would you spell that again?

3 Are you sure it isn't Hoesch, H-o-e --

4 Q H-o-e-s-c-h-?

5 A Yes, Hoesch, yes.

6 Q It's called Hoesch, and

7 that's German?

8 A Yes.

9 Q Hoesch have shown experi-
10 mental data that indicates that they will be able to
11 make spiral welded pipe meeting the requirements of
12 the specification with the completion of mill modi-
13 fications presently being undertaken. They are
14 potentially capable of supplying only a small portion
15 of the line pipe for the project, due to limited
16 capacity of their mills, and is that still the case
17 with Hoesch?

18 A Since then they have in-
19 creased their capabilities, but they are still pre-
20 pared to only furnish a limited amount of pipe.

21 Q I see. They have gone
22 through the mill modifications to meet the specs,
23 but they still have a limited production available?

24 A That's right.

25 Q Then U.S. Steel, an
26 American company, is that correct?

27 A Yes.

28 Q U.S. Steel took numerous
29 exceptions to the specifications, but have indicated
30 that they have the technical capability of making the

1 steel required. At present, however, they have no
2 firm plans to modify their mill in order to produce
3 48 inch diameter pipe. Is that still the circums-
4 tance?

5 A Whether they have reached
6 a definite decision that they will modify their mill
7 to make 48 inch diameter pipe, I've had conflicting
8 reports. I really don't know for certain that they
9 have made the decision to go ahead with that change.

10 Q As of today, we don't
11 know whether we could look to them for any of the
12 pipe or not?

13 A We can't rely on it as of
14 today.

15 Q Then Stelco, Steel Company
16 of Canada which is a Canadian company?

17 A Yes.

18 Q Stelco has not yet
19 demonstrated the capability of making steel with
20 the required strength and toughness in their plate
21 mill.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: In their
23 what?

24 MR. GIBBS: Plate mill.

25 Q Their spiral mill is
26 scheduled for completion and production of trial
27 pipes in January, 1974. Their ability to furnish
28 pipe meeting our specifications is dependent pri-
29 marily on their ability to develop the necessary
30 technical know-how at the plate stage, rather than

1 the mechanical problems associated with the pipe
2 mill. Is that still the case?

3 A Not entirely. They have
4 made pipe that except for a few details, complied
5 with the specifications. We have tested some of
6 this pipe, and discussions with them indicate they
7 have several alternates as far as improving their
8 steel making ability to meet the specifications.

9 Q And have they, sir, pro-
10 duced what I would call a production run as against
11 joints of pipe for test /to meet the Canadian Arctic
12 Gas specifications?

13 A As far as making product-
14 ion runs, I don't know. I don't believe they have.

15 Q No, and that particular
16 mill which was to be completed in January, 1974 is
17 now --

18 A I think they have made
19 some production runs on that mill, but I don't
20 believe they have been production runs on pipe com-
21 plying with our specifications.

22 Q No, it's been a different
23 kind of pipe, thinner wall or smaller diameter,
24 or something like that?

25 A Yes.

26 Q Some more conventional
27 kind of pipe?

28 A Yes.

29 Q And then item 4 is
30 IPSCO, and which is Interprovincial Steel Company, and

1 a Canadian company, to your knowledge?

2 A Yes.

3 Q IPSCO has indicated the
4 capability of supplying smaller diameter pipe, 30
5 inch, required in the project with the required
6 strength and toughness properties. No decision is
7 anticipated for a year or more on a future expansion
8 of their steel and pipe making facilities to produce
9 48 inch, zero decimal 720 inch wall thickness line
10 pipe, and is that still the circumstance with IPSCO?

11 A I believe it is. At the
12 time of that meeting, they indicated that if the
13 project were approved and certainly that the line
14 would be built, that they were prepared to make the
15 investment and make the changes to the mill, so that
16 they would have the capability of making pipe of the
17 sizes we require.

18 Q That's subject to quite a
19 lot of "ifs" though, isn't it? You wouldn't rely
20 very heavily on them as a supplier?

21 A No I wouldn't.

22 Q No.

23 A Not at the present, at
24 least.

25 Q Then number 5 is
26 Kawasaki, K-a-w-a-s-a-ki, which is I understand a
27 Japanese firm?

28 A Yes.

29 Q And it says not included
30 in the meetings. It then goes on, is constructing a

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 new large diameter mill, but has not yet produced any
2 pipe and their future capabilities are yet to be
3 demonstrated, and is that still the case?

4 A That was true at that time,
5 yes.

6 Q Now sir, can we sum all of
7 that up by saying that if you were going to build that
8 pipeline today, you really would have to go to the
9 Japanese and German mills for the pipe?

10 A Not entirely. I believe
11 that Stelco has made their -- has done enough develop-
12 ment work that by the time we would be prepared to
13 place orders, that we could place orders with them
14 with confidence for a large quantity of the pipe.

15 Q Well perhaps I can qualify
16 it by saying this, if you restricted your orders to
17 those companies who have made production runs of 48
18 inch steel, of zero 720 inch wall thickness and who
19 have therefore experience, you would be restricted
20 to Japanese and German mills, would you not?

21 A On that assumption, yes.

22 Q Yes.

23 MR. MARSHALL: You're talking
24 about building the line today are you, Mr. Gibbs,
25 was that the context that you were speaking?

26 MR. GIBBS: I believe that's
27 what I asked him in the question.

28 A I think it should be made
29 clear, however, that this work with the different
30 steel mills and potential pipe suppliers, was to make

1 them aware of what our requirements were, so that
2 they in turn would be able to get in a position to
3 furnish pipe, and of course this is one of the things
4 that Stelco has positively done, and we intend to and
5 are cooperating with them in every way possible with
6 the expectation that they would be an important
7 supplier.

8 Q Oh yes, I am sure you want
9 it, if possible, that Stelco supply some of the pipe?

10 A Yes.

11 Q But then the question is
12 whether Stelco are in the long run going to be capable
13 of doing so? Capable of meeting your specifications?

14 A Yes.
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q Now sir, would you turn
3 to page 36 of your prepared evidence, and in particular
4 paragraph 2 on that page, which says:

5 "In discussions with the manufacturers,"
6 and I take it those are those manufacturers we've
7 just discussed, the German, the Japanese, the Canadian and
8 U.S. Steel?

9 A Yes.

10 Q Yes.

11 "In discussion with the manufacturers the sub-
12 committee indicated the need for evidence that
13 the specifications could be met, especially with
14 regard to the requirements that were more stringent
15 than in other specifications. In many cases the
16 manufacturers rolled pipe and fabricated pipeline
17 components to our specifications so that tests
18 could be made to verify ^{that} the specification
19 requirements had been met."

20 Which manufacturers rolled for you, sir, so that you
21 could make those tests?

22 WITNESS HOLMBERG: We have
23 tested pipe from Sumitomo, Mannesman, N.S.C. (Nippon
24 Steel Company), and I think N.K.K., and Stelco Pipe.

25 Q What kind of tests?

26 A These have included the
27 usual mechanical tests, notch toughness tests, burst
28 tests on the pipe, ^{of} two types, one of which is referred
29 to as the West Jefferson type of test in which the
30 transition temperature of the pipe is checked against

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 the transition temperature as determined by laboratory
3 tests, and then the Athens type test in which the
4 pipe is tested with gas at that the pressures to be
5 used in the line, a fracture initiated, and caused
6 to propagate.

7 Q And were these in every
8 case 40-foot joints?

9 A Essentially 40-foot
10 joints. Some of the -- well, I should say in most
11 cases they were probably a little under 40-foot because
12 part of the pipe was used in making laboratory tests,
13 welding tests and things of that type.

14 Q And those tests, Mr.
15 Holmberg, demonstrated to your satisfaction that those
16 four or five companies had produced in the test pipe
17 that they delivered to you, pipe which met your
18 requirements.

19 A The test pipe that was
20 furnished did not always completely comply with our
21 specifications, and meet our requirements. However,
22 in most cases they were very close to it, and there
23 is every reason to believe that with modifications
24 in their operations that they will have no problem
25 producing pipe to meet our specifications.

26 It should be kept in mind
27 that in making pipe for these tests, that it's been
28 necessary to provide pipe meeting the specifications
29 or attempt to provide pipe meeting the specifications
30 and producing only a small amount of pipe and the

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 mills did not have the opportunity to build up the
3 background of experience in all cases but they succeeded
4 in the time requirements that we placed on obtaining
5 pipe to fully meet our specifications.

6 Q And Mr. Holmberg, would
7 I be using a correct description if I referred to the
8 pipe which was delivered to you for testing as a sample?

9 A As what? I didn't get
10 that word.

11 Q A sample.

12 A As an example?

13 Q As a sample.

14 A Oh, as a sample, yes.

15 Q All right, sir. Do you
16 know how many joints were rejected by Stelco before
17 they produced a sample which they could deliver to you
18 for testing?

19 A I have seen that figure
20 but I don't know.

21 Q A large number of joints
22 I suggest to you, sir?

23 A Yes.

24 Q Which demonstrates that
25 at that point in time they weren't very ready for a
26 production run of a pipe of your specs.

27 A That is right, and not
28 surprising.

29 MR. GIBBS: This would be a
30 convenient time, sir.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 THE COMMISSIONER: The question
3 ~~then~~ is whether we are going to continue this afternoon.
4 Mr. Gibbs is willing to -- what is the view of others?

5 MR. SCOTT: The poll is, Mr.
6 Commissioner, that as far as the other participants
7 are concerned, they require some preparation time.
8 The question is how long this afternoon? Is Mr. Gibbs
9 able to help us?

10 MR. GIBBS: Oh, I should think,
11 sir, perhaps an hour, hour and a half, something in
12 that -- I am content to do it this afternoon or tomorrow
13 morning.

14 MR. SCOTT: Well then, this
15 afternoon for an hour or hour and a half, I gather,
16 would be satisfactory.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, let's
18 adjourn then until 2:30 and we'll start again at 2:30,
19 for perhaps an hour, hour and a half.

20 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 2:30 P.M.)
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1
2 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

3
4 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Gibbs, you
5 had asked Mr. Holmberg to obtain some information for
6 you pertaining to these tests. He's dug that up over
7 the break and he can give you that information now,
8 if you require?

9
10 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. GIBBS, CONTINUED:

11
12 Q All right, sir. Mr. Holm-
13 berg, what I was referring to was the statement on
14 page 23 of the prepared evidence, which says that
15 three separate tests were made to show that reinforcing
16 bends can be used in the remote event of a fracture,
17 to control the length of the fracture.

18 We're on the same wave length
19 for the number of tests and what the tests were for?

20 WITNESS HOLMBERG:

21 A I believe so, and I
22 apologize for not having this information available.

23 Q All right, sir.

24 Could I just make sure we get
25 them in chronological order, these tests took place
26 at separate times over a period of about a year or
18 months?

27 A Yes, the tests I'm refer-
28 ring -- these particular tests actually occurred over
29 a shorter period of time during the past year.

30 Q If it's convenient then,

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gbbs

1 could you refer to them in chronological order --

2 A Yes.

3 Q -- and ^{then} go ahead and des-
4 cribe them in your own words?

5 A Yes. The first test in
6 which crack arrestors were specifically tested, was
7 a test conducted last July. This had a four foot
8 arrestor and the fracture propagated and stopped at
9 the arrestor.

10 The -- in -- as a result of that,
11 and the decision to investigate arrestors further,
12 two tests were made using a somewhat different con-
13 figuration as far as the pipe was concerned. These
14 tests were made at ambient temperature, and were
15 made with just -- instead of having the fracture
16 propagate in opposite directions, the notch at which
17 the fracture initiated failure was located near one
18 end of a somewhat shorter length of pipe.

19 The crack arrestors in these
20 tests, and I might say that this was done to more
21 effectively check crack arrestors. The crack arrestor
22 was located only 12 feet from the origin point. The
23 crack arrestor in one test consisted of a two foot
24 band, and the ends were seal welded. This test
25 proved to be effective.

26 Then the, I believe it was the
27 following day a similar test was made in which a
28 two foot crack arrestor was tested, in which the
29 ends were not fillet welded. This arrestor also
30 proved to be effective. These are the three crack

1 arrestor tests that were referred to in the testimony.

2 I might point out that I would
3 like to make sure there's not a misunderstanding, and
4 that is you asked me about the spacing of the crack
5 arrestors this morning. In these tests, we've actually
6 had a series of several crack arrestors incorporated
7 in each test, so that in the event that arrest did not
8 occur at one arrestor, we would get some information
9 that would be of use for design purposes, and we would
10 possibly get arrest in the next arrestor.

11 The tests to date, why the
12 arrest has always occurred in the first arrestor
13 present, so when you talk about the distance apart,
14 there may have been some misunderstanding where we
15 had this series of arrestors, they were in some of
16 the tests rather closely spaced.

17 Q Well then sir, there were
18 really then four tests, were there?

19 A Well there's since been
20 another test, and this is a test that's been more
21 recently made, in which it was intended to test crack
22 arrestors, but as has occurred in so many of these
23 tests, we've actually had problems of having the --
24 of being successful and having the fracture
25 propagate.

26 These shear fractures propagate
27 at slower speeds as was pointed out yesterday, and
28 are more susceptible to termination by slight
29 deviations in properties or conditions which we
30 don't entirely understand. As a result, the last

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 test that we made, we didn't succeed in getting the
2 fractures to propagate up to the crack arrestors.

3 Q Well Dr. Holmberg, or Mr.
4 Holmberg, I asked for some notes about these tests,
5 and perhaps I can ask you about them and see whether
6 what I am told agrees with your view of the tests?

7 I'm told that in one test, the
8 fracture when initiated, went 150 feet approximately
9 in each direction, and then it stopped on one end at
10 what's called an anchor flange, and at the other end
11 it stopped at the fourth girth weld. Is that
12 accurate?

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 A That is not one of the tests
3 that I included, this arrest at the anchor could be
4 included a crack arrestor, it performed as a crack
5 arrestor, and actually in the pipeline industry there
6 has been a good many instances where propagating
7 fractures have terminated at a change in sections such
8 as a valve or a fitting or anchor point or something
9 of that type. So in effect, there has been some
10 experience that it is possible to stop a propagating
11 fracture by other means than just the toughness of the
12 material.

13 Q Well, in that particular
14 instance it stopped at the girth weld on one end and
15 at the anchor flange on the other.

16 A That is right, and the
17 stopping at the girth weld is an illustration of the
18 difficulty we've experienced in getting these fractures
19 to propagate in the sheer mode, to the distances that
20 we would like to have them propagate.

21 Q Then, sir, there was
22 another test where the fracture ran in each direction
23 and in one direction it stopped of its own accord after
24 about 80 feet, and in the other direction it stopped
25 after about 100 feet at one of your arrestor bands.

26 A That's right.

27 Q Then in still another test
28 as this fracture went in each direction, going in one
29 direction it stopped or it I suppose burst the first
30 girth weld , the first girth weld failed, and going

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 in the other direction the first girth weld failed,
3 the second girth weld failed, and the fracture then
4 by-passed the arrestor and re-initiated itself again.
5 Is that correct?

6 A Yes, that is correct.

7 Q In the third pipe length?

8 A Yes, this is what I
9 refer to as a racing test.

10 Q And doesn't that lead
11 you to conclude that the arrestors really don't stop
12 the fractures when they can come up, by-pass it, and
13 be initiated again?

14 A No, very definitely not.
15 I think it illustrates again the difficulty of making
16 these sheer fractures propagate. Just minor deviations
17 at a girth weld, for example, is enough to cause it to
18 stop. Crack arrestors are ^{being} very conservative and this
19 matter of the pipe breaking off and then a fracture
20 re-initiating, this is something that occurs occa-
21 sionally in pipeline failures. This has occurred in
22 failures in smaller, conventional-size lines. I think
23 this is just another example of that type of re-
24 initiation of a fracture. This has been observed
25 numerous times.

26 Q Yes. Well, is it a
27 correct conclusion to say that the arrestor band didn't,
28 in that circumstance, arrest the fracture?

29 A That's right, we did not
30 include that as an example, as a case where we succeeded

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 in getting arrest at a crack arrestor. This was an
3 additional test that was made, and the fracture arrest --
4 we failed to get a test on the crack arrestor because
5 the fracture terminated before it reached the arrestor.

6 Q Well, is it correct then
7 to say that ⁱⁿ only one of the cases did you really get a
8 test of the fracture?

9 A No, we have three
10 definite tests.

11 Q I see, and in your inter-
12 pretation every one of the three showed that an arrestor
13 band would stop a fracture?

14 A Very definitely.

15 Q Notwithstanding that it
16 only really stopped at an arrestor band in two of the
17 cases.

18 A No, it stopped at an
19 arrestor band in three tests.

20 Q I see. Well, I thought
21 that in the first one it stopped in one direction at
22 the girth weld and at the other direction at a flange.

23 A At the anchor.
24 That was not included in the three tests that I cited.

25 Q All right, sir.

26 A You're going back to what
27 has been referred to as the first CAGSL test.

28 Q But taking that one,
29 that didn't prove anything to you about arrestor bands,
30 unless a flange operates the same.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 A Yes, to me it was
3 significant, as I've mentioned before, to confirmed
4 previous experience that fractures will arrest at
5 changes in section such as flanges and so forth. We
6 did not consider that a crack arrestor test. However, it
7 does demonstrate that fractures can be arrested by
8 changes in section.

9 Q Yes, but we can put that
10 one aside as being no help as a fracture arrestor.

11 A We did not include that
12 as one of the tests.

13 Q All right. Then we get
14 the next one, I put to you where the fracture ran 80
15 feet in one direction and stopped of its own accord,
16 and 100 feet in the other direction and stopped at an
17 arrestor band.

18 A Yes.

19 Q That you interpret as
20 being a test of the arrestor band?

21 A Yes.

22 Q Have you any way of
23 knowing whether that fracture would have stopped there
24 without the arrestor band?

25 A The calculations and
26 studies made indicated that it would have continued to
27 propagate.

28 Q I see, so that's a test
29 that shows --

30 A That's what we considered

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 the first crack arrestor test.

3 Q Then there was another
4 one that I put to you where in one direction it ran and
5 a girth weld failed, and in the other direction it ran
6 and the first girth weld failed and the second girth weld
7 failed, and then it by-passed the arrestor and
8 initiated again,

9 A That's right.

10 Q And in your interpretation
11 does that show that an arrestor is a successful
12 technique?

13 A No. We failed to get a
14 test on an arrestor.

15 Q So we put that one aside.
16 And the next test is the one you told us about where
17 the arrestor --

18 A I might say that these
19 two tests that you're referring to now took place last
20 October, and were before this last test that you were
21 describing.
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Harmon, Harry, Kerkorian, Hightower
 Government by Japan

Q Then there was another

one that I don't know where it was directed it was the

one that was taken, and in the other direction it was

the one that was taken, and in the other direction it was

the one that was taken, and in the other direction it was

the one that was taken, and in the other direction it was

the one that was taken

Q And you say that was the

the one that was taken, and in the other direction it was

A No. We failed to get a

test on an arrestor.

Q So we put that one aside.

And the next test is the one you told us about where

the arrestor --

A I might say that these

two tests that you're referring to now took place last

October, and were before this last test that you were

describing.

1 Q And this last one is the
2 one where the arrestors were what, 12 feet apart or
3 12 feet from the fracture?

4 A There were two separate
5 tests. In both cases, the arrestor was approximately
6 12 feet from the initiating point.

7 Q Yes. And in those cases,
8 the fracture stopped at the arrestor bend?

9 A Yes. So that makes the
10 three tests that were referred to in the testimony.

11 Q Out of five?

12 A Out of five tests, but the
13 first test was not designed specifically as a crack
14 arrestor test. It did stop at this anchor flange,
15 however. The last test was designed as a crack
16 arrestor test, but we were not successful in making
17 the -- in obtaining the, or getting the fracture to
18 propagate far enough to reach the arrestor. The
19 fracture terminated before it reached the arrestor,
20 and this is one of the things that I think is quite
21 important as far as the shear failures.

22 The industry to date, experience
23 is that these shear type fractures do not propagate
24 long distances. The first shear type fracture occurred
25 I think it was in the winter of '68-69, and as far
26 as I have been able to determine, there have been to
27 date only six shear type failures that have been over
28 300 feet long, and the longest failure service, or
29 failure in service has been in the order of a
30 thousand feet long.

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 I think this again illustrates
2 that it's difficult to make these slow running shear
3 fractures propagate long distances, and our decision
4 to use these crack arrestors is really being, in my
5 opinion, very, very conservative.

6 Q And you're satisfied, Mr.
7 Holmberg, on the basis of those three successes out
8 of five tests, if I may put it that way, that the
9 band method of fracture arresting is sufficiently
10 proven to be relied upon?

11 A Yes.

12 Q Is that technique in use
13 anywhere else in North America, in a natural gas
14 pipeline?

15 A As far as I know, it is
16 not, as specifically as arrestors, however the use
17 of crack arrestors is nothing new or novel. For
18 example, during the war when ships were breaking in
19 two, one of the first corrective measures was the
20 extensive use of crack arrestors. This proved to be
21 very, very effective and is still used in spite of the
22 development of notch tough steels that are resistant
23 to fracture.

24 For example, the United States
25 Navy has certain ships in which they have some of
26 the toughest steels available. They do not consider
27 it prudent to rely simply on notch toughness to arrest
28 fractures. They consider it to be absolutely safe,
29 it's necessary to rely on crack arrestors, and there
30 are other cases in the oil industry, as well as other

1 industries, for example the aircraft industry where
2 crack arrestors are used. It may be a new application
3 as far as the pipeline is concerned, but it's not a
4 new concept by any means.

5 Q No sir, but in the sense
6 of experience being a part of technology in the use
7 of this technique in a natural gas pipeline, you are
8 incorporating a new technology?

9 A Yes, I would say we are
10 incorporating a new technology to increase the safe-
11 ness of the line.

12 Q And isn't there, Mr. Holm -
13 berg, another way that you can reduce the risk of
14 fracture propagation, and that is by reducing the
15 operating pressure?

16 A Yes, that is beneficial.

17 Q And was that given consider-
18 ation in your design?

19 A This has been discussed,
20 but we decided not to go that way.

21 Q Why?

22 A We feel the crack arrestors
23 is a more foolproof and more reliable method than to
24 go to lower pressures, or smaller diameter pipe.

25 Q The ultimate test really
26 is that it's more economic to use fracture arrestors
27 than it is to reduce the pressure?

28 A I'm not qualified to answer
29 that.

30 Q Well reducing the pressure

1 reduces the daily throughput of the pipeline, would
2 it not?

3 A Yes, I understand that.

4 Q Yes, and so that reduces
5 -- it follows your --

6 A Yes, but where the
7 economic balance is, I don't know.

8 Q I see. Mr. Holmberg, I'm
9 told that the use of these fracture arrestor bands
10 may introduce a risk -- a greater risk of corrosion
11 than would be the case if you were not using the
12 bands? Do you agree with that?

13 A There is a possibility of
14 this, but it's being studied and we think we have
15 several methods of combatting that. I personally
16 don't think this is a serious factor.

17 Q Well, in existing pipeline
18 systems, something similar to an arrest band is used
19 when a hot tap is placed on the pipeline, is it not?

20 A Yes.

21 Q And isn't it fairly normal
22 operating procedure in due course to cut out that
23 reinforcing band because of the corrosion possibili-
24 ties?

25 A I'm not sure that I under-
26 stand what your question is. That is you put the
27 band on and make the hot tap, and I don't follow you
28 on cutting it out.

29 Q But at some later stage
30 you take that out and you put in what's been called,

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 I think a T joint, so that you get rid of that hot
2 tap and the reinforcing part that you put on when you
3 made the hot tap?

4 A I don't personally know
5 that that is done. I could see where there would be
6 reasons for putting a T in rather than a hot tap
7 connection, however.

8 Q For the three tests, Dr.
9 Holmberg, whose pipe was tested in each of those three
10 cases? Which manufacturer?

11 A I would have to check on
12 that, I'm sorry. I didn't bring these particular
13 files with me, I thought I brought every file imagin-
14 able. I had to check on the phone and get this
15 information.

16 Q All right. Mr. Purcell,
17 could we come back to you and ask you to address your
18 mind to the steel specifications? Are you with me?

19 WITNESS PURCELL:

20 A Yes sir.

21 Q And is it not so, Mr.
22 Purcell, that the metallurgical subcommittee deter-
23 mined the steel specifications?

24 A That's what I think we say
25 in the direct evidence, yes, sir.

26 Q And that not one member
27 of this panel was a member of the metallurgical sub-
28 committee?

29 A The metallurgical sub-
30 committee by definition was composed of people who

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

1 worked for the sponsoring companies of Arctic Gas.

2 Q Yes, and therefore --

3 A Mr. Holmberg did attend,
4 I think, most all the meetings of the sub-committee,
5 as did people in Northern Engineering, and people
6 in Canadian Arctic Gas.

7 Q Yes sir, but to come back
8 to my question, not one member of this panel is a
9 member of the metallurgical subcommittee?

10 A By definition I think
11 because they work for someone else.

12 Q Yes. But however, they
13 were not a member?

14 A But that doesn't imply
15 that they had no voice in the deliberations.

16 Q Well sir, I am coming to
17 that. And then at the metallurgical subcommittee
18 meetings where the manufacturers were interviewed,
19 the only member of this panel who was in attendance
20 at those meetings was Mr. Holmberg?

WITNESS HOLMBERG:

21 A Yes, that is correct.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
23 the metallurgical subcommittee which decided on the
24 specifications for the steel, consisted of metallurgists,
25 I take it, from the members of the consortium which
26 sponsored Arctic Gas, is that --

27 WITNESS HOLMBERG: That's right.

28 WITNESS PURCELL:

29 A It wasn't a hundred percent
30 representation. They selected several.

1 MR. GIBBS:

2 Q But just to be sure, no
3 -- it was not this design group on the witness stand
4 that determined the steel specifications?

5 A Mr. Holmberg participated
6 in the discussions and I'm sure had an influence on
7 the specifications that were developed.

8 Q Yes sir, but I cannot say
9 as I look at all eight of you, that you are the group
10 that determined the steel specifications?

11 A That's right.

12 Q Yes. Can we talk now,
13 Mr. Purcell, a little bit about welding? Is the
14 girth welding which occurs in the field, a matter
15 for the design group to take into account? Do
16 they specify what's required in the girth welding?

17 A The development of the
18 girth weld welding procedures is again a function of
19 the metallurgical design sub-committee.
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Bibbs

1
2 Q And so that sub-committee
3 of representatives of sponsors determined what the welding
4 techniques should be.

5 A Yes, and in this case I
6 think Mr. Holmberg is the gentleman that the sub-committee
7 appointed to lead the research, to lead the development
8 of that work. Is that not correct?

9 To write the
10 initial specifications, at any rate.

11 WITNESS HOLMBERG:

12 I was given the responsibility
13 for preparing the welding specifications. In addition
14 to that there was a research program put into effect,
15 and one of the member company representatives was chair-
16 man of that research group.

17 And again

18 I attended many of their meetings but I was not a
19 member of that group, by your definition.

20 Q In those meetings of
21 the Metallurgical Sub-Committee, you were there as a
22 guest in attendance to listen and advise.

23 A Could be defined as a
24 guest. However, I was participated -- was free to
25 participate in any way considered appropriate.

26 Q Now sir, if you take a
27 piece of pipe with one or more girth welds in it,
28 would it be accurate to say that if there is a risk of
29 failure, the risk is greater at the weld than it is
30 in the manufactured section of the pipe?

A Yes, I'd say that's been

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Hibbs

1
2 the experience.

3 Q Yes, and to the extent that
4 .720-inch of wall thickness is greater than .540, the
5 risk is greater with the thicker wall surface than the
6 thinner one.

7 A I don't know as I'd agree
8 to that. I think the risk is approximately the same in
9 both cases.

10 Q Well, as I understand it,
11 sir, in girth welding the practice is to weld around the
12 pipe and then around again, and each time the weld goes
13 around it's called a pass.

14 A Yes.

15 Q And clearly you would
16 agree that three-quarters of an inch pipe requires more
17 passes than half an inch pipe.

18 A Yes.

19 Q And will you not then
20 take the next step with me and agree that therefore
21 three-quarters of an inch pipe girth weld is a greater
22 risk probability or possibility than half-inch pipe
23 girth weld?

24 A No.

25 Q I see. Why would you not
26 agree with that?

27 A Because each time you
28 make a pass on the -- in welding, you have some benefi-
29 cial effect on the preceding passes, and this would
30 be greater on a thicker wall than on a thinner wall.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Also, the area that's most susceptible to failure is
3 actually the route pass, and this includes a greater
4 proportion of a thin wall as compared to a thick wall.

5 Q Aren't girth weld failures
6 also related to the pipe composition, what I for want
7 of a better expression call the hardness of the pipe?
8 Its ability to be welded.

9 A Yes.

10 Q And are you familiar, Mr.
11 Holmberg, with recent serious problems in the girth
12 welding of pipe by Union Gas in south-western Ontario
13 pipe produced by Stelco?

14 A No, I'm not.

15 Q We talked a little bit
16 about the making of steel now, and I guess it's Mr.
17 Purcell who is the chairman of the panel who I should
18 be talking to. In the making of the steel that you
19 require, Mr. Purcell, are there not two, for want of
20 another expression, two inherent problems that the
21 pipe manufacturer has. One is in the actual making of
22 the steel, and the other is in the rolling of it into
23 pipe? Those are the two really basic significant
24 operations, are they not?

25 WITNESS PURCELL: Yes sir, I'm
26 sure they are. I think if you carried on this dialogue
27 with Mr. Holmberg you'd get better informed answers,
28 though.

29 Q That's assuming that that's
30 what I want, but surely, we'll talk with Mr. Holmberg.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me a moment, Mr. Gibbs. Mr. Gibbs, carry on, please.

MR. GIBBS: Q I'm right to begin with in saying that your specs call for 40-foot joints, plus or minus a small variation?

WITNESS HOLMBERG: Yes.

Q And that if I take 48-inch pipe and measure the circumference, I get 12 1/2 feet.

A I believe that's right,

Q Within a few decimal points.

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me, Mr. Gibbs. Do you mind just repeating that?

MR. GIBBS: Yes sir. I asked whether I was correct that their specs called for 40-foot joints, 40 feet in length.

THE COMMISSIONER: 40-foot lengths of pipe?

MR. GIBBS: Lengths of pipe, and that when you measure the circumference of a 48-inch diameter pipe the result is about 12 1/2 feet.

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, all right, I'm on board.

MR. GIBBS: And I believe Mr. Holmberg agreed with that. So for every joint of pipe, what that steel producer has to produce is a plate of steel of consistent quality throughout, 40 feet long and 12 1/2 feet wide, and .720 of an inch thick.

A Yes.

Q And that thickness

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Bibbs

1
2 tolerance is very narrow, is it not? You can go thicker
3 by 10%, which would bring it to 0.79, and thinner by
4 5%, which would bring it down as low as 0.69.

5 A Yes.

6 Q And that plate must have
7 no flaws.

8 A Steel, as well as any other
9 product, is not absolutely free from flaws.

10 Q All right, but a very
11 minor and minimal amount of flaws.

12 A That's right.

13 Q And isn't that the first
14 test of the steel maker to be able to produce that
15 plate?

16 A Yes.

17 Q And that's one of the
18 difficult things.

19 A Yes.

20 Q To use a homely analogy,
21 I'm told that it's like making icing, that lots of
22 people can make icing but only the good chef can make
23 superb icing.

24 A It can be put that way,
25 I guess.

26 Q And that's the case in
27 these steel plates.

28 A There is a lot of skill
29 in making it, yes.

30 Q And that's really what

1
2 as at April 1973, at least, Stelco lacked in their
3 ability to produce that plate, was the master chef or
4 master brewer who could turn it out.

5 A I wouldn't put it quite
6 that way. Stelco is just starting at the time to
7 develop the ability to make the plate, they had
8 certain limitations in their equipment at that time,
9 they had not made a -- I believe at that time they
10 had not made a firm decision to go ahead and make 48--
11 equip their mill to make 48-inch diameter pipe, so at
12 that time they had done relatively little work as far
13 as developing a steel for this project.

14 Q And of those dimensions.

15 A Yes, that's right.

16 Q And that really is a
17 technique or ability that improves with experience as
18 you go along.

19 A One of the limitations and
20 factors that has to be considered is the physical ability
21 of the plate mill itself to roll the plate that large.

22 Q Yes, and sir, since
23 April of 1973, Stelco really hasn't had much opportunity
24 to develop the technique of rolling that plate to your
25 specs.

26 A Stelco has made the
27 decision to put in a pipe mill that will make spiral
28 welded pipe. This requires -- this enables them to make
29 pipe with a narrower width of plate than a 12-foot
30 wide -- 12 1/2 foot wide plate.

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q And have they produced any
3 spiral weld pipe on a production -- sustained production
4 basis of your specifications?

5 A I don't know of any.

6 Q Then the next problem in
7 the making of the pipe is the taking of that plate and
8 rolling it into a pipe, and welding a seam.

9 A Yes.

10 Q That's done with the
11 plate cold?

12 A Yes.

13 Q And that requires -- that's
14 a technique which is an acquired technique, is it not,
15 to be able to roll that without altering the roundness
16 so you can get a consistent roundness of pipe.

17 A Yes.
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q And that again is an ability
2 or technique that comes with experience?

3 A Yes.

4 Q And would vary with the
5 thickness of the pipe and the width of the plate?

6 A Yes, to some degree.

7 Q Now sir, is there any ex-
8 perience in North America, to your knowledge, in
9 rolling pipe to your specifications twelve and a half
10 feet wide into a round pipe which will sustain the
11 pressures that your pipeline is going to have to
12 sustain?

13 A No, there's no experience
14 to our specifications.

15 There's experience in making
16 steel to the specifications, making pipe to smaller
17 sizes to the specifications, and I might say that in
18 making pipe to smaller sizes, frequently a more
19 serious problem than making it to a larger size, for
20 example the degree of bending that is required is
21 more severe on smaller sizes than large sizes.

22 So it shouldn't be interpreted
23 that simply to make larger size pipe is necessarily
24 more difficult.

25 Q Or necessarily more easy
26 because of the thickness?

27 A I can conceive of situations
28 where it could be easier.

29 Q The absence of experience,
30 sir, comes back to what I talked to Mr. Purcell

1 about and that is that this package is a new techn-
2 ology?

3 A I don't consider it any
4 new technology. Simply to change sizes and dimensions
5 and specifications to a minor degree, does not, in my
6 opinion, introduce a new technology.

7 Q Well, Mr. Purcell --

8 A There have been advances
9 in which we're applying taking the benefit of advances
10 in technology, and I don't think we need to apologize
11 for that.

12 Q No sir, but you're proposing
13 to put in a system, the like of which has not and does
14 not exist in the world, are you not?

15 A That's right.

16 Q Now, Mr. Purcell, can we
17 come back to the two 40 inch supply lines from the
18 north that meet at Travaillant Lake? In March of
19 this year, Mr. Purcell, the applicant produced the
20 document called "Supplement to Applications and
21 Exhibits Relative to Alternative 42 Inch Supply
22 Lateral Line Size" which has been marked as Exhibit
23 74, and you, I presume had some input into the pre-
24 paration of that document?

25 WITNESS PURCELL:

26 A Yes, we did.

27 Q And is it right to conclude
28 that that was filed a year after the application was
29 filed, that it was sometime in that year between
30 March, 1974 and March of 1975 that you began seriously

1 considering 42 inch lines instead of 48? For the
2 northern supply lines?

3 A Yes, sir.

4 Q But there was no change
5 in the daily volumes you were to put through those two
6 lines?

7 A That's correct.

8 Q Then what led you to con-
9 clude that you should think about 42 when from 1969
10 to 1974, 48 inch seemed to be appropriate?

11 A It was not my decision to
12 consider 42 inch. It was made by Canadian Arctic
13 Gas, of course.

14 Q So that was another part
15 of design that the sponsor donated to you?

16 A Yes, as in all the other
17 cases. They had rough information on the relative
18 costs of transporting gas through these two sizes,
19 that we had prepared.

20 Q And what you are contem-
21 plating in that alternative and described in Exhibit
22 74, is 42 inch outside diameter, zero decimal 63
23 wall thickness, operating at 1,680 feet per square
24 inch gauge? Pounds per square inch gauge?

25 A Yes, sir.

26 Q And in the sense that I
27 induced you to agree with me that the other package
28 was new, had not any experience in the world, would
29 the same apply to this? Is there experience in using
30 42 inch outside diameter zero decimal 63 inch wall

1 thickness operating at 1,680 pounds persquare inch?

2 A No, sir, I think not.

3 Q And so that is at much a
4 new innovation in pipelining of natural gas in the
5 world as the 48 inch was?

6 A In the sense that it hasn't
7 been done before, that's correct.

8 Q But what that does do for
9 you, using those 42 inch lines, is now it brings you
10 in within your test of minimum cost of transportation
11 much better than it did with two 48 inch pipelines?

12 A I think the filings show
13 that there's a slight improvement in cost of service
14 with the 42 inch pipeline.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
16 I don't understand that.

17 What is the advantage again?

18 A This is a part of the work
19 that we did not do. It's based on some of the work
20 we did. The cost of service, the cents per mcf cost
21 of transporting gas was slightly reduced by the 42
22 inch pipe size alternative, primarily because there's
23 a lower construction cost.

24 Q Now these are for the
25 supply laterals?

26 A Yes, sir.

27 Q From Prudhoe Bay and
28 Richards Island?

29 A That's correct.

30 MR. GIBBS: Well it's not only

1 because of a lower construction, it's lower capital
2 cost too, surely?

3 A That's what I meant by
4 construction cost, yes, sir.

5 Q Have you any idea then,
6 Mr. Purcell, why 42 inch lines were not used in the
7 original application?

8 A We've stated in the appli-
9 cation that an overriding criterion was to delay
10 looping as long as possible, so we put in excess
11 capacity in the 48 inch lines, at the expense of a
12 slight increase in the cost of service.

13 Q And now you are contemplat-
14 ing improving the cost of service by reducing the
15 size?

16 A That's an alternative
17 that's been suggested by Canadian Arctic Gas.

18 Q And in Exhibit 74, on
19 page 3, the applicant says:

20 "The material submitted
21 herewith is filed so that it may be examined
22 by the board, the Department and its inquiry
23 at this time, so that final evaluation
24 may be made more expeditiously should the
25 applicant hereafter determine that it
26 should amend its applications to reflect
27 the changes".

28 Do you have any information on
29 whether that determination has yet been made?

30 A No sir, to my knowledge,

1 that has not been made.

2 Q So as far as you're con-
3 cerned, we're still at the 48 inch high cost of service
4 supply lines?

5 A I think Canadian Arctic
6 Gas --

7 MR. MARSHALL: Well I don't
8 think that's what the witness said, Mr. Gibbs.

9 MR. GIBBS: No, that's what I
10 said because I was asking the question.

11 A I think that CAGSL has
12 filed this as an alternative. I don't know how
13 heavily they weight it, I can't answer the question.

14 Q Could we now go back, Mr.
15 Purcell, to page 5 of your prepared evidence? In
16 particular, the last two of the objectives on the
17 -- at the end of the second paragraph of page 5, and
18 in summary, Mr. Purcell, is this not correct, that
19 you have in fact incorporated technology which is
20 not present day technology?

21 A No, Mr. Gibbs, I don't
22 agree. I think the interpretation has to do with
23 the confidence that we can get pipe to these
24 specifications. Pipe seems to be the item on which
25 we are spending our time.

26 We can get pipe to these speci-
27 fications within the schedule for the project, within
28 the normal lead time. We are confident that the
29 mills can make this kind of pipe and in that sense,
30 I don't think we're depending upon something that

1 may happen in the future.

2 Q But sir, in the sense that
3 this package has never before been used anywhere in
4 the world, is not that new technology?

5 A I think we're building --
6 we are building up to the 48 inch in steps, and each
7 one of the steps involves an increase in diameter,
8 or an increase in wall thickness, and the fact that
9 it hasn't been done before in that combination to me
10 is not -- does not mean that we are using new
11 technology.

12 Q Then your third objective
13 was, that the pipeline system should be an optimum
14 design so that it could be built and operated to
15 transport gas at the minimum unit cost?

16 A That is an engineering
17 objective.

18 Q Yes, sir.

19 A And that at all times in
20 our work, was our objective.

21 Q But you --

22 A There are other non-
23 engineering considerations that sometimes take
24 precedence.

25 Q But sir, how did you meet
26 that objective? How did your eight people here at
27 the table -- you were given the points of supply;
28 you were given the daily volumes; you were given
29 the gas composition; you were given the points of
30 delivery and you were told what pipe sizes to use,

Holmberg, Purcell, King, Koskimaki,
McMullen, Reid, Price, Rathje
Cr. Exam. by Gibbs

ALLWEST REPORTING LTD.
BURNABY 2, B.C.

1 and you were told what specs you had to use? So what
2 did you do to design the system?

3 A Given those starting
4 points, we did our compressor station design so that
5 we came up with the minimum unit cost of transporting
6 the gas through that system. I think that's the pri-
7 mary example of continuing to use the -- continuing
8 to follow that objective in view of what had been
9 given to us.

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Gibbs

1
2 Q So your design really
3 narrows down to a compressor station.

4 A It's always, I'm sure,
5 been an objective of Mr. McMullen, to build a communi-
6 cations system that would, along with the other
7 things that are important to him, have a minimum cost.
8 There is an awful lot of design that goes on after
9 the pipe size is selected.

10 MR. GIBBS: Mr. Commissioner, I
11 wonder whether my friend, Mr. Marshall, is going to
12 produce someone who can speak to those very basic
13 points of design, which this panel has really
14 evidently nothing to do with?

15 MR. MARSHALL: We have indicated
16 that Mr. Horte will be called as a witness, Mr. Gibbs,
17 and there are a number of these things that he will
18 speak on, the points of supply and delivery and so on.

19 MR. GIBBS: Those are all of
20 my questions.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Could I just
22 ask you a question, Mr. Purcell?

23 Q Mr. Gibbs emphasized with
24 you when he was asking you about your statement that
25 you were not going beyond present day technology. The
26 diameter of the pipe and the wall thickness, and the
27 problems that that would create in manufacturing the
28 pipe and so forth, what -- you may have said this --
29 but the pressure, the gas is under pressure when it
30 is expelled from each compressor station at, I think

Purcell, King, Koskimaki, Holmberg
McMullen, Price, Rathje, Reid
Cross-Exam by Commissioner

1
2 it was 1,650 pounds per square inch. Is that right?

3 WITNESS PURCELL: 1,680.

4 Q 1,680. Maybe you did
5 answer this question. The conventional operating
6 pressure of natural gas pipelines in Canada, is there
7 any figure you can give me or are they all over the
8 place? And whether they are or not, are any of them
9 within the range of 1,680 pounds per square inch?

10 A No sir, I think they are
11 more in the range of 700 to 1,000 pounds per square
12 inch. I think there are several reasons for our
13 departure that can be explained. One has to do with the
14 fact that this pipe of this size and wall thickness has
15 not been available for a very long time, and people have
16 not had the chance to use it. Another factor is that
17 the increasing the diameter and increasing the wall
18 thickness and operating pressure gives you economics
19 in the cost of service and the unit cost of transporting
20 gas, but you need enormous gas volumes to get to the
21 level before you can take advantage of it, and this is
22 one of the first new systems that's been proposed
23 recently where that kind of gas volume has been part
24 of the picture.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes. Well
26 I think this is a good time to adjourn and I should
27 warn the counsel and of course the panel and others
28 that we might have to take a day off Thursday. We might
29 not sit Thursday. I'll let you know tomorrow.

30 So we will adjourn to 9 A.M.

1 then.

2 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO APRIL 16, 1975)

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

347

M835

Vol. XXX

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

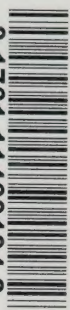
TITLE

Vol. XXX 15 April 1975

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

347
M835
Vol. XXX



3 1761 11469194 2